

Modicon M340

Ethernet Communications Modules and Controllers

User Guide

User Guide
Original instructions

31007131.19
02/2026

Legal Information

The information provided in this document contains general descriptions, technical characteristics and/or recommendations related to products/solutions.

This document is not intended as a substitute for a detailed study or operational and site-specific development or schematic plan. It is not to be used for determining suitability or reliability of the products/solutions for specific user applications. It is the duty of any such user to perform or have any professional expert of its choice (integrator, specifier or the like) perform the appropriate and comprehensive risk analysis, evaluation and testing of the products/solutions with respect to the relevant specific application or use thereof.

The Schneider Electric brand and any trademarks of Schneider Electric SE and its subsidiaries referred to in this document are the property of Schneider Electric SE or its subsidiaries. All other brands may be trademarks of their respective owner.

This document and its content are protected under applicable copyright laws and provided for informative use only. No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means (electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise), for any purpose, without the prior written permission of Schneider Electric.

Schneider Electric does not grant any right or license for commercial use of the document or its content, except for a non-exclusive and personal license to consult it on an "as is" basis.

Schneider Electric reserves the right to make changes or updates with respect to or in the content of this document or the format thereof, at any time without notice.

To the extent permitted by applicable law, no responsibility or liability is assumed by Schneider Electric and its subsidiaries for any errors or omissions in the informational content of this document, as well as any non-intended use or misuse of the content thereof.

Table of Contents

Safety Information	11
Before You Begin	12
Start-up and Test	13
Operation and Adjustments	14
About the Document	15
Modicon M340 Hardware and Communication Requirements	21
Modicon M340 Modules for Ethernet Communications	22
External Features	22
BMXNOE01x0 Physical Description	23
BMXP342020 Physical Description	24
BMXP342030/20302 Physical Description	25
Common Features	26
Module Dimensions	26
Ethernet LED Indicators	28
10/100 BASE-T Interface	33
M340 Ethernet Module Overview	36
Ethernet Networks	36
Backplane Position	37
Choosing an M340 Ethernet Communications Module or Controller	40
Communication Module Features and Selection Guide	40
Controller Presentation	41
Ethernet Service Selection Table	42
Compatibility	43
Hardware Installation	45
Assembling an M340 Station	45
Grounding Installed Modules	47
Memory Cards	49
Memory Card Features	54
Wiring Considerations	56
Ethernet Communications	57
IP Parameters	58
Methods for IP Addressing	58

- Rotary Switches 60
- Deriving IP Parameters from the MAC Address 62
- IP Address Assignment Process 63
- Ethernet Port Status 65
- Multi-Module Communication 68
 - Multi-Module Communication 68
- Description of Ethernet Communications Services 76
 - I/O Scanning Service 76
 - I/O Scanning Service 76
 - Read and Write Zones 80
 - Address Assignment through DHCP and BOOTP 81
 - Address Assignment through DHCP/BOOTP 81
 - Modicon M340 DHCP/BOOTP Example 83
 - BMX NOE 01x0 as a DHCP Server 84
- SNMP 86
 - SNMP and Schneider Private MIB Overview 87
 - SNMP Communication 88
 - SNMP Operations Example 90
- Global Data 91
 - Global Data 91
- Fast Device Replacement 93
 - Replacing Devices 94
- Bandwidth Monitoring 95
 - Bandwidth Monitoring 95
 - Static and Dynamic Bandwidth Monitoring 96
- TCP/IP Messaging 97
 - Data Exchange 98
 - Transparent Device Access 98
- Time Synchronization Service 100
 - Introducing the Time Synchronization Service 100
 - Using the Time Synchronization Service 103
 - Using the R_NTPC Block for Time Synchronization 104
- Electronic Mail Notification Service 105
 - Introducing the Electronic Mail Notification Service 105
 - Using the Electronic Mail Notification Service 107

Using the SEND_EMAIL Block for Electronic Mail Notification	108
Electronic Mail Notification Service Error Codes	110
Modicon M340 Module Descriptions and Specifications	112
The BMX NOE 01x0 Communication Module	113
BMX NOE 01x0 Ethernet Services	113
BMX NOE 01x0 Environmental and Electrical Characteristics	117
Standards and Certifications	118
The BMX P34 2020 and BMX P34 2030 CPUs	119
BMX P34 20x0 Ethernet Services	119
BMX P34 20x0x Environmental and Electrical Characteristics	121
Ethernet Configuration with Control Expert	123
Software Configuration Parameters	124
The Configuration Screen	124
Configuration of Modicon M340 Controllers	124
Configuration of an Ethernet Network	135
Security	136
Security Features	136
IP Configuration Parameters	138
The IP Configuration Tab	138
Configuration Parameters for IP Addresses	140
Ethernet Frame Format	141
Messaging Configuration Parameters	141
The Messaging Configuration Tab	141
Messaging Configuration Parameters	143
I/O Scanner Configuration Parameters	144
The I/O Scanning Tab	144
I/O Scanning Contextual Menu for Copy/Cut/Paste	149
I/O Scanning with Multiple Lines	150
Introduction to Configuring Advantys from Control Expert	152
Introduction to Configuring the PRM Master DTM	156
Introduction to Configuring a BMX PRA 0100 from Control Expert	158
Property Box	161
Saving an Advantys Configuration in an Control Application	166
Managed Variables	167
I/O Scanner Concepts	169

Scanning Period	170
Configuration of Parameters Linked to the I/O Scanner Utility	171
Configuration of General Parameters for the I/O Scanner.....	171
I/O Scanner: Health Block Bits	172
I/O Scanner: Device Control Block	173
Global Data Configuration Parameters	175
The Global Data Configuration Tab.....	176
Configuration of Global Data Variables	177
Configuration of General Parameters for Global Data	178
Configuration of Parameters Linked to Global Data	179
SNMP Configuration Parameters	180
Configuring SNMP as an Agent.....	180
SNMP Configuration Parameters	183
Address Server Configuration Parameters.....	185
Address Server.....	185
Bandwidth Checking	186
Bandwidth Checking Configuration.....	187
Electronic Mail Notification Service Configuration Parameters.....	189
The SMTP Tab	189
Time Synchronization Service Configuration Parameters.....	191
The NTP Tab	191
Configuring an Ethernet Network.....	197
Configuration Methodology for an Ethernet Network.....	197
Adding the Module to an Ethernet Network	200
Debugging with Control Expert	203
Module Debugging Screen	203
General Debugging Parameters	206
Debugging Parameters for TCP/IP Utilities	210
Debugging Parameters for I/O Scanning	210
Debugging Parameters for Global Data	211
Ethernet Language Objects.....	212
Language Objects and IODDTs of Ethernet Communication	212
Language Objects and IODDTs of Ethernet Communication.....	212
Details of T_COM_EIP IODDT	213

Implicit Exchange Language Objects Associated with the Application-Specific Function	215
Explicit Exchange Language Objects Associated with the Application-Specific Function	216
Exchange Objects of Type T_COM_ETH_BMX.....	219
Details of Implicit Exchange Objects of the IODDT Type T_COM_ETH_BMX	219
Details of Explicit Exchange Objects of the IODDT Type T_COM_ETH_BMX	220
Details of Explicit Exchange Objects for an Ethernet Function	222
Language Objects Associated with BMX NOE 01x0 and BMX P34 20x0 CPU Configuration	223
Language Objects for Configuration	223
Language Objects for Implicit Exchange	224
Language Objects for Explicit Exchange	226
Language Objects and Generic IODDT Applicable to Communication Protocols	229
Details of the Language Objects of the IODDT of Type T_GEN_MOD	229
M340 Ethernet Communications Quick Start	231
Hardware Installation	231
Modicon M340 Configuration with Control Expert	232
Ethernet Network Configuration with Control Expert	234
Assign the BMX NOE 0100 IP Address.....	235
Configure Ethernet Communication Service (I/O Scanning)	237
Associate the Network with the Module	241
Build a Program.....	242
Connect the System and Download the Configuration	243
Debugging the Module	244
Embedded Web Pages	246
Embedded Web Pages	247
M340 Web Pages	247
Introduction to Web Services	247
Embedded HTTP Server	249
BMX NOE 0100 Home Page.....	251
BMX NOE 0100 Monitoring Page	252

BMX NOE 0100 Diagnostics Page	253
Server Rack Display Page	254
BMX NOE 0100 Setup Page	256
FTP Security Page	256
HTTP and Data Editor (Write) Page	257
Upload MIB File	259
Properties	260
Ethernet Service Diagnostics Pages	260
Global Data	260
I/O Scanning	261
Messaging	262
Statistics	263
Bandwidth Monitoring	264
Class C Services	264
Introduction to Class C Services	264
Graphic Editor Overview	265
Top Window User Functions	267
Display Window User Functions	272
Property Sheet	275
Security	276
Graphic Editor Applet Parameters	277
Graphic Objects	278
Extended Graphic Objects	297
Appendices	308
TCP/IP Technical Characteristics	309
Summary of TCP/IP Characteristics	309
Address Management for Ethernet Modules	310
Modbus Communication on the TCP/IP Profile	311
Managing TCP Connections for Modbus	314
Opening a TCP/IP Connection	315
Closing a TCP/IP Connection	316
Broken TCP/IP Connections	317
IP Address Details	319
IP Addresses and Classes	319
Multicasting Considerations	324

Transparent Ready Service Classes	326
Service Classes	326
Schneider Private MIB	330
The Schneider Private MIB	330
Schneider Private MIB Tree Structure	332
MIB Subtree Description	340
Switch Subtree Description	341
Port 502 Messaging Subtree Description	342
I/O Scanning Subtree Description	342
Global Data Subtree Description	343
Web Subtree Description	344
Address Server Subtree Description	344
Equipment Profile Subtree Description	344
Time Management Subtree Description	346
Email Subtree Description	346
Transparent Factory MIB Version	347
Private Traps and MIB Files	347
Glossary	351
Index	363

Safety Information

Important Information

Read these instructions carefully, and look at the equipment to become familiar with the device before trying to install, operate, service, or maintain it. The following special messages may appear throughout this documentation or on the equipment to warn of potential hazards or to call attention to information that clarifies or simplifies a procedure.



The addition of this symbol to a “Danger” or “Warning” safety label indicates that an electrical hazard exists which will result in personal injury if the instructions are not followed.



This is the safety alert symbol. It is used to alert you to potential personal injury hazards. Obey all safety messages that follow this symbol to avoid possible injury or death.

DANGER

DANGER indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, **will result in** death or serious injury.

WARNING

WARNING indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, **could result in** death or serious injury.

CAUTION

CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, **could result in** minor or moderate injury.

NOTICE

NOTICE is used to address practices not related to physical injury.

Please Note

Electrical equipment should be installed, operated, serviced, and maintained only by qualified personnel. No responsibility is assumed by Schneider Electric for any consequences arising out of the use of this material.

A qualified person is one who has skills and knowledge related to the construction and operation of electrical equipment and its installation, and has received safety training to recognize and avoid the hazards involved.

Before You Begin

Do not use this product on machinery lacking effective point-of-operation guarding. Lack of effective point-of-operation guarding on a machine can result in serious injury to the operator of that machine.

▲ WARNING

UNGUARDED EQUIPMENT

- Do not use this software and related automation equipment on equipment which does not have point-of-operation protection.
- Do not reach into machinery during operation.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

This automation equipment and related software is used to control a variety of industrial processes. The type or model of automation equipment suitable for each application will vary depending on factors such as the control function required, degree of protection required, production methods, unusual conditions, government regulations, etc. In some applications, more than one processor may be required, as when backup redundancy is needed.

Only you, the user, machine builder or system integrator can be aware of all the conditions and factors present during setup, operation, and maintenance of the machine and, therefore, can determine the automation equipment and the related safeties and interlocks which can be properly used. When selecting automation and control equipment and related software for a particular application, you should refer to the applicable local and national standards and regulations. The National Safety Council's Accident Prevention Manual (nationally recognized in the United States of America) also provides much useful information.

In some applications, such as packaging machinery, additional operator protection such as point-of-operation guarding must be provided. This is necessary if the operator's hands and

other parts of the body are free to enter the pinch points or other hazardous areas and serious injury can occur. Software products alone cannot protect an operator from injury. For this reason the software cannot be substituted for or take the place of point-of-operation protection.

Ensure that appropriate safeties and mechanical/electrical interlocks related to point-of-operation protection have been installed and are operational before placing the equipment into service. All interlocks and safeties related to point-of-operation protection must be coordinated with the related automation equipment and software programming.

NOTE: Coordination of safeties and mechanical/electrical interlocks for point-of-operation protection is outside the scope of the Function Block Library, System User Guide, or other implementation referenced in this documentation.

Start-up and Test

Before using electrical control and automation equipment for regular operation after installation, the system should be given a start-up test by qualified personnel to verify correct operation of the equipment. It is important that arrangements for such a check are made and that enough time is allowed to perform complete and satisfactory testing.

▲ WARNING

EQUIPMENT OPERATION HAZARD

- Verify that all installation and set up procedures have been completed.
- Before operational tests are performed, remove all blocks or other temporary holding means used for shipment from all component devices.
- Remove tools, meters, and debris from equipment.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

Follow all start-up tests recommended in the equipment documentation. Store all equipment documentation for future references.

Software testing must be done in both simulated and real environments.

Verify that the completed system is free from all short circuits and temporary grounds that are not installed according to local regulations (according to the National Electrical Code in the U.S.A, for instance). If high-potential voltage testing is necessary, follow recommendations in equipment documentation to prevent accidental equipment damage.

Before energizing equipment:

- Remove tools, meters, and debris from equipment.

- Close the equipment enclosure door.
- Remove all temporary grounds from incoming power lines.
- Perform all start-up tests recommended by the manufacturer.

Operation and Adjustments

The following precautions are from the NEMA Standards Publication ICS 7.1-1995:

(In case of divergence or contradiction between any translation and the English original, the original text in the English language will prevail.)

- Regardless of the care exercised in the design and manufacture of equipment or in the selection and ratings of components, there are hazards that can be encountered if such equipment is improperly operated.
- It is sometimes possible to misadjust the equipment and thus produce unsatisfactory or unsafe operation. Always use the manufacturer's instructions as a guide for functional adjustments. Personnel who have access to these adjustments should be familiar with the equipment manufacturer's instructions and the machinery used with the electrical equipment.
- Only those operational adjustments required by the operator should be accessible to the operator. Access to other controls should be restricted to prevent unauthorized changes in operating characteristics.

About the Document

Document Scope

This document describes the implementation of the BMXNOE01x0 communication module and the BMXP3420x0 controller platform with embedded ports on Ethernet networks.

Validity Note

This document is valid for EcoStruxure™ Control Expert 16.2 or later.

The characteristics of the products described in this document are intended to match the characteristics that are available on www.se.com. As part of our corporate strategy for constant improvement, we may revise the content over time to enhance clarity and accuracy. If you see a difference between the characteristics in this document and the characteristics on www.se.com, consider www.se.com to contain the latest information.

Related Documents

Title of documentation	Reference number
Modicon M340, Controllers, Setup Guide	35012676 (English), 35012677 (French), 35013351 (German), 35013352 (Italian), 35013353 (Spanish), 35013354 (Chinese)
EcoStruxure™ Control Expert, Operating Modes	33003101 (English), 33003102 (French), 33003103 (German), 33003104 (Spanish), 33003696 (Italian), 33003697 (Chinese)
Modicon M580, M340, and X80 I/O Platforms, Standards and Certifications	EIO0000002726 (English), EIO0000002727 (French), EIO0000002728 (German), EIO0000002730 (Italian), EIO0000002729 (Spanish), EIO0000002731 (Chinese)
EcoStruxure™ Control Expert, I/O Management, Block Library	33002531 (English), 33002532 (French), 33002533 (German), 33003684 (Italian), 33002534 (Spanish), 33003685 (Chinese)
EcoStruxure™ Control Expert, Communication, Block Library	33002527 (English), 33002528 (French), 33002529 (German), 33003682 (Italian), 33002530 (Spanish), 33003683 (Chinese)

Title of documentation	Reference number
Transparent Ready User Guide	31006929 (English), 31006930 (French), 31006931 (German), 31006932 (Spanish)
FactoryCast for Modicon M340 User Manual	35015192 (English), 35015193 (French), 35015194 (German), 35015195 (Spanish), 35015196 (Italian)

To find documents online, visit the Schneider Electric download center (www.se.com/ww/en/download/).

Product Related Information

DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION, OR ARC FLASH

- Disconnect all power from all equipment, including connected devices, prior to removing any covers or doors or installing or removing any accessories, hardware, cables, or wires except under the specific conditions specified in the appropriate hardware guide for this equipment.
- Always use a properly rated voltage-sensing device to confirm the power is off where and when indicated.
- Replace and secure all covers, accessories, hardware, cables, and wires and confirm that a proper ground connection exists before applying power to the equipment.
- Use only the specified voltage when operating the equipment and any associated products.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

▲ WARNING

LOSS OF CONTROL

- Perform a Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) or equivalent risk analysis of your application and apply preventive and detective controls before implementation.
- Provide a fallback state for undesired control events or sequences.
- Provide separate or redundant control paths wherever required.
- Supply appropriate parameters, particularly for limits.
- Review the implications of transmission delays and take actions to mitigate them.
- Review the implications of communication link interruptions and take actions to mitigate them.
- Provide independent paths for control functions (for example, emergency stop, over-limit conditions, and error conditions) according to your risk assessment, and applicable codes and regulations.
- Apply local accident prevention and safety regulations and guidelines.¹
- Test each implementation of a system for proper operation before placing it into service.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

¹ For additional information, refer to NEMA ICS 1.1 (latest edition), *Safety Guidelines for the Application, Installation, and Maintenance of Solid State Control* and to NEMA ICS 7.1 (latest edition), *Safety Standards for Construction and Guide for Selection, Installation and Operation of Adjustable-Speed Drive Systems* or their equivalent governing your particular location.

▲ WARNING

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

- Only use software approved by Schneider Electric for use with this equipment.
- Update your application program every time you change the physical hardware configuration.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

General Cybersecurity Information

In recent years, the growing number of networked machines and production plants has seen a corresponding increase in the potential for cyber threats, such as unauthorized access, data breaches, and operational disruptions. You must, therefore, consider all possible cybersecurity measures to help protect assets and systems against such threats.

To help keep your Schneider Electric products secure and protected, it is in your best interest to implement the cybersecurity best practices as described in the [Cybersecurity Best Practices](#) document.

Schneider Electric provides additional information and assistance:

- [Subscribe to the Schneider Electric security newsletter.](#)
- [Visit the Cybersecurity Support Portal web page to:](#)
 - [Find Security Notifications.](#)
 - [Report vulnerabilities and incidents.](#)
- [Visit the Schneider Electric Cybersecurity and Data Protection Posture web page to:](#)
 - [Access the cybersecurity posture.](#)
 - [Learn more about cybersecurity in the cybersecurity academy.](#)
 - [Explore the cybersecurity services from Schneider Electric.](#)

Trademarks

QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED in Japan and other countries.

Terminology Derived from Standards

The technical terms, terminology, symbols and the corresponding descriptions in the information contained herein, or that appear in or on the products themselves, are generally derived from the terms or definitions of international standards.

In the area of functional safety systems, drives, and general automation, this may include, but is not limited to, terms such as *safety*, *safety function*, *safe state*, *fault*, *fault reset*, *malfunction*, *failure*, *error*, *error message*, *dangerous*, etc.

Among others, these standards include:

Standard	Description
IEC 61131-2:2007	Programmable controllers, part 2: Equipment requirements and tests.
ISO 13849-1:2023	Safety of machinery: Safety related parts of control systems. General principles for design.
EN 61496-1:2013	Safety of machinery: Electro-sensitive protective equipment. Part 1: General requirements and tests.
ISO 12100:2010	Safety of machinery - General principles for design - Risk assessment and risk reduction
EN 60204-1:2006	Safety of machinery - Electrical equipment of machines - Part 1: General requirements
ISO 14119:2013	Safety of machinery - Interlocking devices associated with guards - Principles for design and selection
ISO 13850:2015	Safety of machinery - Emergency stop - Principles for design
IEC 62061:2021	Safety of machinery - Functional safety of safety-related electrical, electronic, and electronic programmable control systems
IEC 61508-1:2010	Functional safety of electrical/electronic/programmable electronic safety-related systems: General requirements.
IEC 61508-2:2010	Functional safety of electrical/electronic/programmable electronic safety-related systems: Requirements for electrical/electronic/programmable electronic safety-related systems.
IEC 61508-3:2010	Functional safety of electrical/electronic/programmable electronic safety-related systems: Software requirements.
IEC 61784-3:2021	Industrial communication networks - Profiles - Part 3: Functional safety fieldbuses - General rules and profile definitions.
2006/42/EC	Machinery Directive
2014/30/EU	Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive
2014/35/EU	Low Voltage Directive

In addition, terms used in the information contained herein may tangentially be used as they are derived from other standards such as:

Standard	Description
IEC 60034 series	Rotating electrical machines
IEC 61800 series	Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems
IEC 61158 series	Digital data communications for measurement and control – Fieldbus for use in industrial control systems

Finally, the term *zone of operation* may be used in conjunction with the description of specific hazards, and is defined as it is for a hazard zone or danger zone in the Machinery Directive (2006/42/EC) and ISO 12100:2010.

NOTE: The aforementioned standards may or may not apply to the specific products cited in the present documentation. For more information concerning the individual standards applicable to the products described herein, see the characteristics tables for those product references.

Information on Non-Inclusive or Insensitive Terminology

As a responsible, inclusive company, Schneider Electric is constantly updating its communications and products that contain non-inclusive or insensitive terminology. However, despite these efforts, our content may still contain terms that are deemed inappropriate by some customers.

Modicon M340 Hardware and Communication Requirements

What's in This Part

Modicon M340 Modules for Ethernet Communications.....	22
M340 Ethernet Module Overview	36
Choosing an M340 Ethernet Communications Module or Controller	40
Hardware Installation	45

Introduction

This part contains an overview of hardware and communications requirements for the BMXNOE01x0 modules and BMXP3420x0 controllers on Ethernet networks.

For Modicon M340 system installation and specifications, see *Modicon X80 Racks and Power Supplies, Hardware, Reference Manual*.

NOTE: The BMXNOE01x0 modules have an embedded web server. Access the website for monitoring, diagnosing, or setting up the module. Refer to the *Modicon M340, FactoryCast, User Manual* for a description of the website.

Modicon M340 Modules for Ethernet Communications

What's in This Chapter

External Features	22
Common Features	26

Introduction

This chapter provides graphic representations of the Modicon M340 modules that can be used for communications between Ethernet networks and M340 rack assemblies. The appropriate modules are:

- **BMXNOE0100** and **BMXNOE0110**: These network option modules are dedicated to Ethernet communications.
- **BMXP342020** and **BMXP342030**: In addition to their functionality as controllers, these controllers have embedded ports for Ethernet communications.

Elsewhere in this document is information about selecting the appropriate hardware for your system and application needs, page 40.

External Features

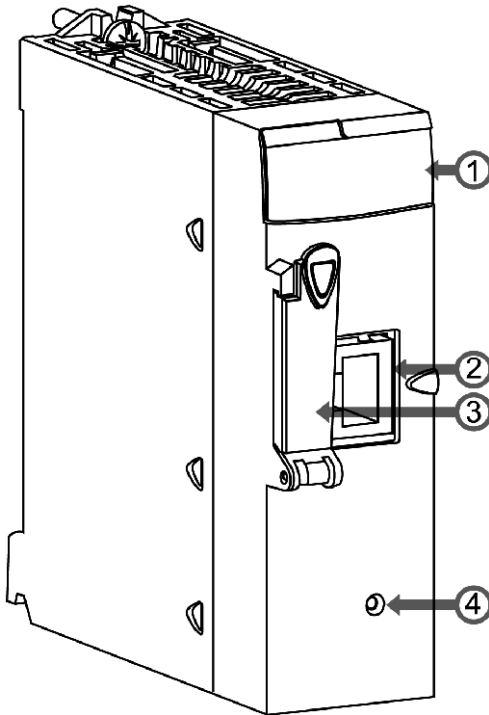
Introduction

This section identifies the external features and ports on the BMXNOE01x0 modules and BMXP3420x0 controllers.

BMXNOE01x0 Physical Description

The Module

This illustration shows the BMXNOE01x0 communication modules:



Legend:

- **1** LED display, page 28
- **2** Ethernet port, page 33
- **3** memory card slot

A memory card can be used to store files, such as web pages and log files. Elsewhere in this guide are performance characteristics of standard and optional memory cards, page 49.

- **4** reset button

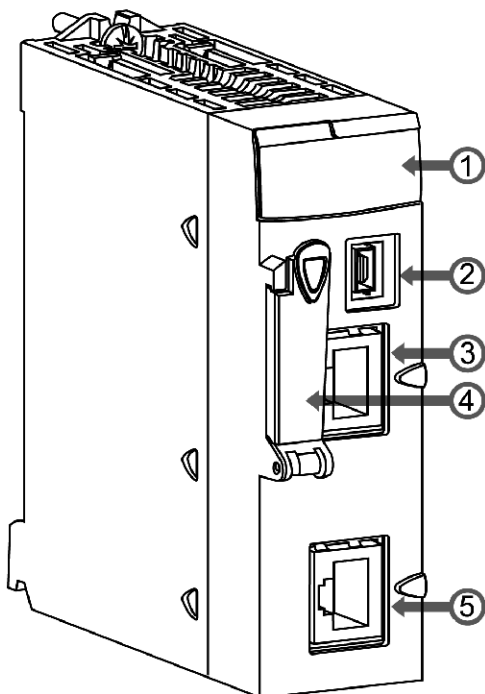
Press this button to cold start the module. (After the reset, the network recognizes the module as a new device.)

NOTE: Confirm that the door of the memory card slot is **closed** when the module is powered. The memory card may experience electrostatic discharge if the door remains open.

BMXP342020 Physical Description

The Module

This illustration shows the BMXP342020 controller:



Legend:

- **1** LED display, page 28
- **2** USB port
- **3** Ethernet port, page 33

- **4 memory card slot**

Used to:

- store files, such as web pages and log files
- backup code
- backup application

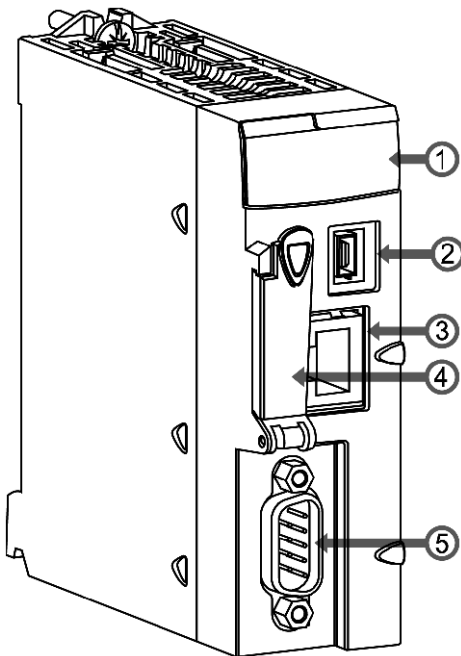
Elsewhere in this guide are performance characteristics of standard and optional memory cards, page 49.

- **5 Modbus serial port**

BMXP342030/20302 Physical Description

The Module

This illustration shows the BMXP342030/20302 controller:



Legend:

- **1 LED display**, page 28
- **2 USB port**

- **3** *Ethernet port*, page 33
- **4** *memory card slot*

Used to:

- store files, such as web pages and log files
- backup code
- backup application

Elsewhere in this guide are performance characteristics of standard and optional memory cards, page 49.

- **5** *CANopen port*

Common Features

Introduction

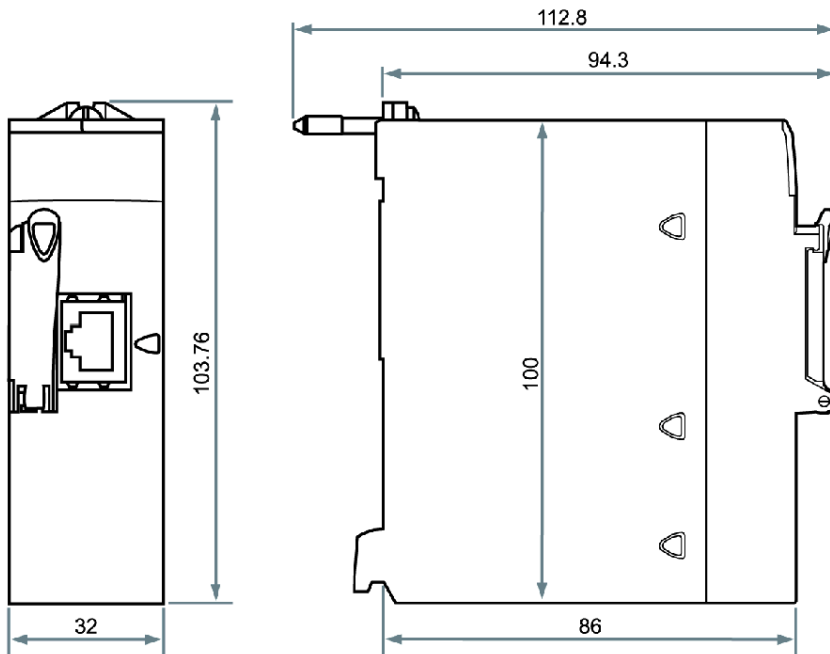
This section describes the common physical features of the BMXNOE01x0 modules and BMXP3420x0 controllers.

Module Dimensions

Dimensions

The dimensions of M340 modules conform to the characteristics of the rack.

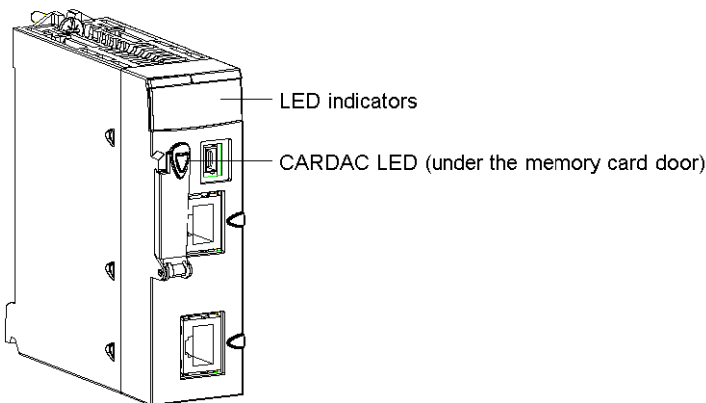
This figure shows the dimensions (in mm) for the M340 Ethernet communication modules and M340 controllers:



Ethernet LED Indicators

Introduction

The following illustration presents the physical location of the LED indicators and the memory card access LED on the front panel of the M340 module or controller:

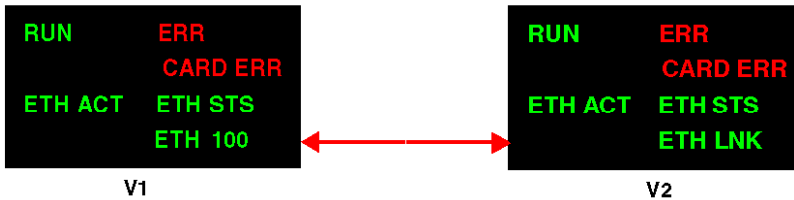


These LEDs provide information on:

- controller operation
- memory card
- communication with the modules
- serial communication
- communication on the CANopen network
- communication on the Ethernet network

BMXNOE01x0 LEDs

The following diagram shows the diagnostic LEDs on the BMXNOE01x0 modules. Note that two displays exist, depending on whether you are using firmware V1 or V2 (or greater) of the module.



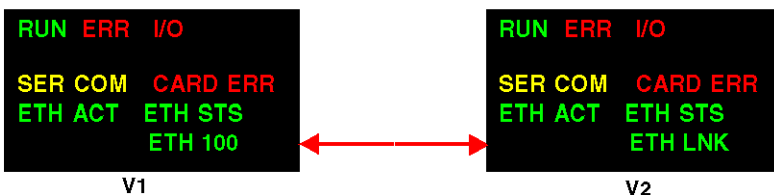
The colors and blink patterns of the LEDs indicate the status and operating conditions of Ethernet communications on the module:

Label	Pattern	Indication
RUN (green): operational state	on	Module is operating and configured.
	flashing	Module is blocked by a software detected error.
	off	Module is not configured (application is absent, invalid, or incompatible).
ERR (red): detected error	on	Controller, system, or configuration detected error
	flashing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Module is not configured (application is absent, invalid, or incompatible). Module is blocked by a software detected error.
	off	Normal (no detected errors)
ETH STS (green): Ethernet communication status	on	Communication OK
	2 flashes	Invalid MAC address
	3 flashes	Link not connected
	4 flashes	Duplicate IP address
	5 flashes	Waiting for a server IP address
	6 flashes	Secure mode (with default IP address)
	7 flashes	Configuration conflict between rotary switches and internal configuration

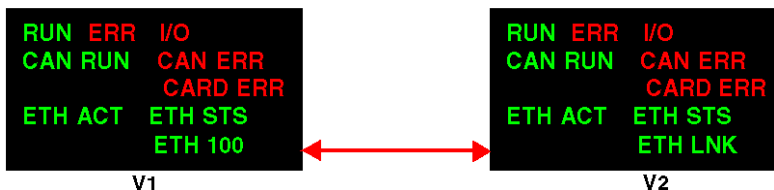
Label	Pattern	Indication
CARD ERR (red): memory card detected error	on	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Memory card is missing. Memory card is not usable (incorrect format, unrecognized type). Memory card had been removed and reinserted.
	off	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Memory card is valid and recognized.
Note 1: Rapid flashing is defined as ON for 50 ms and OFF for 50 ms.		
Note 2: Slow flashing is defined as ON for 200 ms and OFF for 200 ms.		

BMXP342020, BMXP342030/20302 Controller LEDs

The following diagram shows the diagnostic LEDs on the BMXP342020 controller. Note that two displays exist, depending on whether you are using firmware V1 or V2 (or greater) of the controller.



The following diagram shows the diagnostic LEDs on the BMXP342030/20302 controller. Note that two displays exist, depending on whether you are using firmware V1 or V2 (or greater) of the controller.



The colors and blink patterns of the LEDs indicate the status and operating conditions of Ethernet communications on the module:

Label	Pattern	Indication
RUN (green): operational state	on	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Controller hardware and program operations are normal. Module is in RUN state.
	flashing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Controller is in STOP mode, or a blocking error in the application has been detected. Controller is configured but not in RUN state.
	off	Controller is not configured (application is absent, invalid, or incompatible).
ERR (red): detected error	on	Controller, system, or configuration detected error
	flashing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Controller is not configured (application is absent, invalid, or incompatible). Controller is in STOP mode or a blocking error in the application has been detected.
	off	Normal (no detected errors)
ETH STS (green): Ethernet communication status	on	Communication OK
	2 flashes	Invalid MAC address
	3 flashes	Link not connected
	4 flashes	Duplicate IP address
	5 flashes	Waiting for a server IP address
	6 flashes	Secure and safe mode (with default IP address)
	7 flashes	Configuration conflict between rotary switches and internal configuration
CARD ERR (red): memory card detected error	on	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Memory card is missing. Memory card is not usable (incorrect format, unrecognized type). Memory card content is inconsistent with internal RAM application.
	off	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Memory card is valid and recognized. Application on card is consistent with the internal RAM application.
I/O (red): input/output status	on	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Error detected on a configured module or controller channel Configuration mismatch with the application (module missing...)
	off	Normal (no detected errors)
SER COM (yellow): serial data status	flashing	Data exchange (send/receive) on the serial connection in progress
	off	No data exchange on the serial connection

Label	Pattern	Indication
CAN RUN (green): CANopen operations	on	CANopen network operational
	rapid flashing (note 1)	Automatic detection of data flow or LSS services in progress (alternates with CAN ERR).
	slow flashing (note 2)	CANopen network is pre-operational.
	1 flash	CANopen network is stopped.
	3 flashes	Downloading CANopen firmware.
CAN ERR (red): CANopen detected error	on	CANopen bus is stopped.
	rapid flashing (note 1)	Automatic detection of data flow or LSS services in progress (alternates with CAN RUN).
	slow flashing (note 2)	CANopen configuration is not valid.
	1 flash	At least one detected error counter has reached or exceeded alert level.
	2 flashes	A guard event (NMT secondary or NMT primary) or a heartbeat event has occurred.
	3 flashes	The SYNC message was not received before the end of the communication cycle period.
	off	No error detected on CANopen.
Memory card access LED (green) Note: This LED is located under the memory card door, page 23.	on	Access to the card is enabled.
	flashing	Activity on the card: During each access, the card LED is set to OFF, then back to ON.
	off	Access to the card is disabled. You can remove the card after you disable card access by setting system bit %S65 to 0.
Note 1: Rapid flashing is defined as ON for 50 ms and OFF for 50 ms.		
Note 2: Slow flashing is defined as ON for 200 ms and OFF for 200 ms.		

LED Differences Between BMXNOE01x0 and BMXP3420x0x Firmware V1 and V2

The following table describes the meaning of the ETH ACT and ETH 100 LEDs on the front panel for firmware V1 NOE and controller modules.

Label	Pattern	Indication
ETH ACT (green): Ethernet communication (transmission/reception activity)	on	Ethernet link detected: no communications activity.
	off	No Ethernet link detected.
	flashing	Ethernet link detected: receiving or sending packets.
ETH 100 (green): Ethernet transmission speed	on	Ethernet transmission at 100 Mbit/s (Fast Ethernet).
	off	Ethernet transmission at 10 Mbit/s (Ethernet) or no link detected.

The following table describes the meaning of the ETH ACT and ETH LNK LEDs on the front panel for firmware V2 NOE and controller modules.

Label	Pattern	Indication
ETH ACT (green): Ethernet communication (transmission/reception) activity	on	Communications activity detected.
	off	No communications activity detected.
ETH LNK (green): Ethernet link status	on	Ethernet link detected.
	off	No Ethernet link detected.

NOTE:

- Rapid flashing is defined as ON for 50 ms and OFF for 50 ms.
- Slow flashing is defined as ON for 200 ms and OFF for 200 ms.

10/100 BASE-T Interface

Introduction

The 10/100 BASE-T interface is a standard RJ45 connector. In an industrial environment, use a cable with the following characteristics:

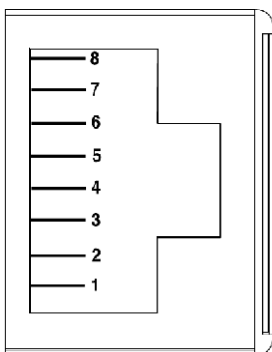
- shielded twisted double pair
- impedance of $100 \Omega \pm 15 \Omega$ (from 1 to 16 MHz)
- maximum attenuation of 11.5 dB/100 meters
- maximum length of 100 meters

The following straight-through Modicon cables fit these requirements for connecting terminal devices:

Description	Reference		Length in m (ft)
	Low smoke zero halogen	UL/CSA CMG	
Straight-through cable with RJ45 ends	490NTW00002	490NTW00002U	2 (6.6)
	490NTW00005	490NTW00005U	5 (16.4)
	490NTW00012	490NTW00012U	12 (39.4)
	490NTW00040	490NTW00040U	40 (131.2)
	490NTW00080	490NTW00080U	80 (262.5)

Pin Assignment

The connector:



Pinout assignment table:

Pin	Signal
1	TD+
2	TD-
3	RD+
4	not connected
5	not connected
6	RD-
7	not connected
8	not connected

NOTE: If there is a connection via a shielded cable, the connector casing on the module is linked up to the ground connection.

Line Speed

The different line speeds that are available for the BMXNOE01x0 module and the integrated Ethernet port of the BMXP342020/2030/20302 controller are:

- 100 Mb in half duplex
- 100 Mb in full duplex
- 10 Mb in half duplex
- 10 Mb in full duplex

You cannot configure the line speed. Characteristics of speed adaptation are:

- Auto-sensing and auto-negotiation allow the Ethernet module to quickly configure itself to the local Ethernet switch speed and duplex mode.
- The negotiated speed between two Ethernet devices is limited to the speed of the slower device.

Port Status

Elsewhere in this guide is a discussion of the Ethernet port status, page 65.

M340 Ethernet Module Overview

What's in This Chapter

Ethernet Networks	36
Backplane Position	37

Introduction

This chapter contains an overview of the BMXNOE01x0 modules and BMXP3420x0 controllers on Ethernet networks.

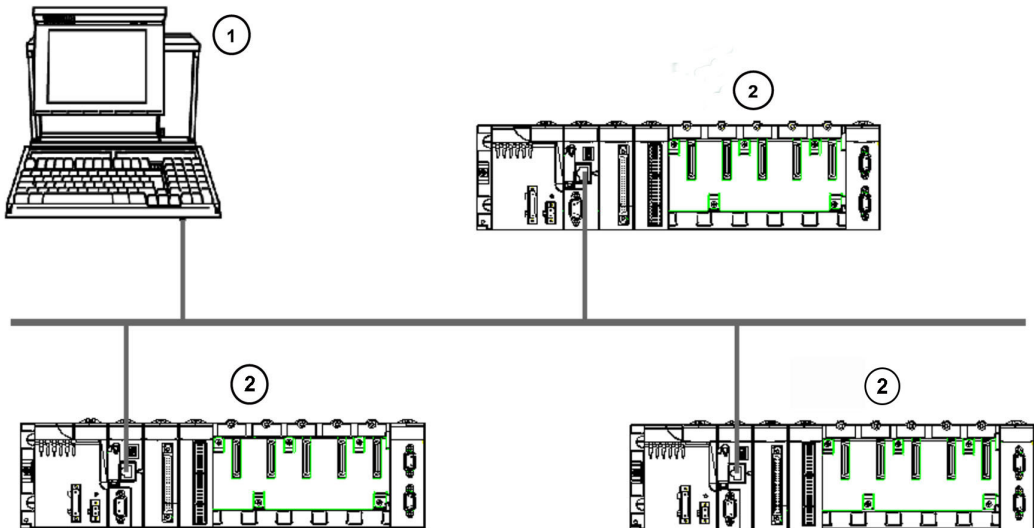
Ethernet Networks

Introduction

Ethernet networks are designed to facilitate:

- coordination between programmable controllers
- local or centralized supervision
- communication with the business data processing of production
- communication with remote input/output modules

An Ethernet network:



1. server
2. M340 backplane

NOTE: Be careful routing the Ethernet cable through the factory as the cable may be damaged by other equipment within the factory.

Backplane Position

Introduction

This topic describes the appropriate backplane positions of the BMXNOE01•0 modules and BMXP3420x0x controllers on a station assembly during installation, page 45.

Available Modules

An M340 controller can manage an entire backplane. These three controllers have Ethernet communication ports:

- BMXP342020
- BMXP342030
- BMXP3420302

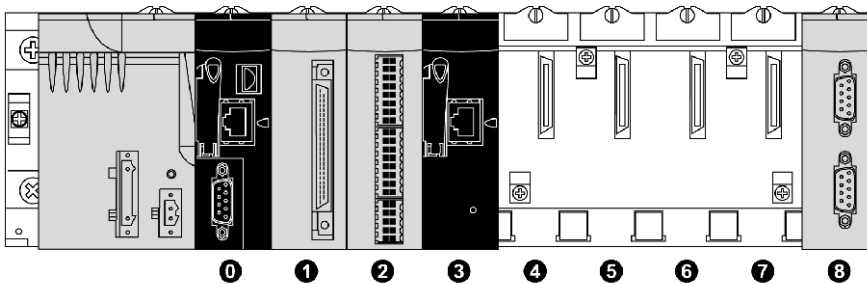
The BMXP3420x0x controllers can manage a station composed of:

- discrete I/O modules
- analog I/O modules
- function modules (counting, communication, etc.)

NOTE: Refer to the *Modicon X80 Racks and Power Supplies, Hardware, Reference Manual* for specific part numbers.

Backplane Position

The following backplane assembly includes an M340 controller (in this case a BMXP342030) and a BMXNOE01•0 module (in this case a BMXNOE0100). Backplane positions 0 to 8 are indicated. (The double-wide power supply is mounted at the beginning of the backplane.)



0 BMXP342030 controller at backplane position 0

1 discrete I/O module at backplane position 1

2 counter module at backplane position 2

3 BMXNOE0100 Ethernet communications module at backplane position 3

4-7 available backplane positions

8 M340 extension module at backplane position 8

Module Positioning

Mechanically, it is possible to position the BMXP34 controller or the I/O modules in any slot. However, it is a best practice to place the modules in these positions:

- **BMXP3420x0**: Place the controller at position 0. Position 0 also conforms to the controller form factor.
- **BMXNOE01x0**: Modules that conform to the M340 I/O form factor, such as the BMXNOE01•0modules, can be placed in any other available slot.
- **BMXCPS2000**: The double-wide backplane power supply is mounted at the beginning of the assembly on the left.

BMXP3420•0• Controllers

The following table shows the backplane operations and communications details for the BMXP3420x0x controllers:

Controller	Physical format	Maximum number of I/O modules		Maximum memory size	Integrated port		
		Discrete	Analog		CANopen	Ethernet	Modbus Serial
BMXP342020	simple	1024	256	4096 Kb	—	X	X
BMXP342030/ 20302	simple	1024	256	4096 Kb	X	X	—
*: per backplane							
X: available							
—: not available							

Choosing an M340 Ethernet Communications Module or Controller

What's in This Chapter

Communication Module Features and Selection Guide	40
Controller Presentation.....	41
Ethernet Service Selection Table.....	42
Compatibility.....	43

Introduction

This chapter helps you select the hardware that is most appropriate for your Ethernet application and system requirements.

BMXNOE01x0 communication modules and BMXP3420x0 controllers support a variety of network services.

Communication Module Features and Selection Guide

Introduction

The M340 controllers can communicate with Ethernet networks using:

- Ethernet communication modules (BMXNOE01x0, page 113)
- embedded ports on the M340 controllers (BMXP3420x0x, page 119)

The interfaces for these communications modules are described below. When making your selection, consider the services of each module, page 42.

Embedded Ports on M340 Controllers

The BMXP3420x0x controllers have these ports:

Controller	Ports
BMXP342020	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • USB • Ethernet • Modbus serial
BMXP342030/20302	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • USB • Ethernet • CANopen

The locations of the ports are shown at [External Features](#), page 22.

Controller Presentation

Characteristics

This table describes the characteristics of BMXP34••••• controllers:

Characteristic		BMXP341000	BMXP342000	BMXP342010 BMXP3420102	BMXP342020	BMXP342030 BMXP3420302
Maximum number of channels	Discrete backplane inputs/outputs	512	1024	1024	1024	1024
	Analog input/output modules	128	256	256	256	256
	Expert channels (counting, PTO, MPS, NOM, etc.)	20	36	36	36	36
	Network communication (TCP/IP)	2	3	3	3	3
	AS-i fieldbus ⁽¹⁾ communication	2	4	BMXP342010: 0 BMXP3420102: 4	4	BMXP342030: 0 BMXP3420302: 4
Maximum number of modules	Embedded serial port	1	1	1	1	-
	Embedded Ethernet port	-	-	-	1	1

Characteristic		BMXP341000	BMXP342000	BMXP342010 BMXP3420102	BMXP342020	BMXP342030 BMXP3420302
	Embedded CANopen port	-	-	1	-	1
Memory size	User application	2048 Kb	4096 Kb	4096 Kb	4096 Kb	4096 Kb

(1) The AS-i field bus requires a controller firmware version of 2.10 or later. For more information, see the *Modicon X80 AS-Interface Bus Module, User Manual*.

Ethernet Service Selection Table

Available Services

This tables summarizes the services that are available for the different Ethernet communications modules.

Service	Ethernet modules	Embedded ports on controllers	
	BMXNOE01x0	BMXP342030/ 20302	BMXP342020
Connection at 10 Mbits/s	X	X	X
Connection at 100 Mbits/s	X	X	X
TCP/IP	X	X	X
SNMP:			
• Standard MIB	X	X	X
• MIB Transparent Factory	X	X	X
I/O scanner	X	—	—
Address server (BOOTP/DHCP server)	X	—	—
BOOTP/DHCP client	X	X	X
Modbus messaging	X	X	X
Firmware update via Unity Loader	X	X	X
Embedded HTTP server	X	X	X
Global data	X	—	—
NTP	X	—	—
SMTP	—	X	X

Service	Ethernet modules	Embedded ports on controllers	
	BMXNOE01x0	BMXP342030/20302	BMXP342020
Fast device replacement (FDR server)	X	—	—
FDR client	X	X	X
Diagnostics from web pages	X	X	X
User-customizable web pages	with an installed class C memory card (BMXNOE0110 modules only)	—	—
Additional interface	N/A	CANopen	Serial
Legend			
X: service is present			
—: service is not available			

See the detailed descriptions for:

- Ethernet services, page 76
- Schneider’s Transparent Ready service classes, page 326
- Class C services for the BMXNOE01x0 modules, page 326

Compatibility

M340 NOE and Controller Version Compatibility

Note the following compatibility issues when plugging an BMXNOE01x0 module with a BMXP3420x0 controller in the backplane. Certain combinations of firmware V1 and V2 modules are supported.

	NOE firmware V1	NOE firmware V2 (with an application for an NOE V1)	NOE firmware V2 (with an application for an NOE V2)
Controller firmware V1	Compatible	Compatible	Incompatible
Controller firmware V2 (with an application for a controller V1)	Compatible	Compatible	Incompatible
Controller firmware V2 (with an application for a controller V2)	*Incompatible	Incompatible	Compatible

* In this case, the NOE module will be not recognized as correct by the controller when the application starts. An I/O error message will be displayed, as if a module other than an NOE were inserted in the slot.

Hardware Installation

What's in This Chapter


Assembling an M340 Station	45
Grounding Installed Modules	47
Memory Cards.....	49
Memory Card Features.....	54
Wiring Considerations	56

Introduction

This chapter describes the installation of the BMXNOE01x0 modules and BMXP3420x0 controllers.

Assembling an M340 Station

Introduction

 DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION, OR ARC FLASH

- Disconnect all power from all equipment, including connected devices, prior to removing any covers or doors or installing or removing any accessories, hardware, cables, or wires except under the specific conditions specified in the appropriate hardware guide for this equipment.
- Always use a properly rated voltage-sensing device to confirm the power is off where and when indicated.
- Replace and secure all covers, accessories, hardware, cables, and wires and confirm that a proper ground connection exists before applying power to the equipment.
- Use only the specified voltage when operating the equipment and any associated products.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

This topic provides steps for installing the M340 communication modules and controllers on the backplane.

M340 modules and controllers are powered by the backplane bus.

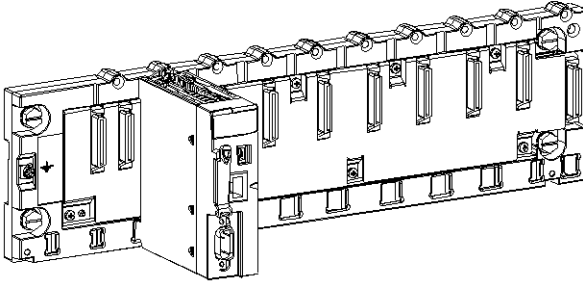
Fitting operations (installation, assembly, and disassembly) are described below.

Elsewhere in this guide is a discussion of the proper address locations on the backplane for BMXNOE01x0 modules and M340 controllers, page 37.

Installing a Controller

A BMXP3420x0 controller is always installed on the backplane in slot marked **00** (address 0).

The following diagram shows a BMXP3420x0 controller mounted on a BMXXBP backplane in the slot marked **00** (address 0):

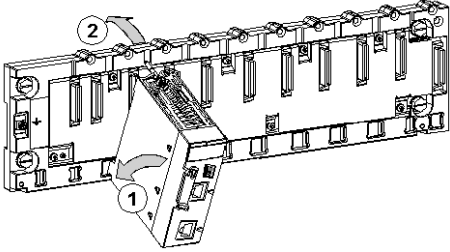
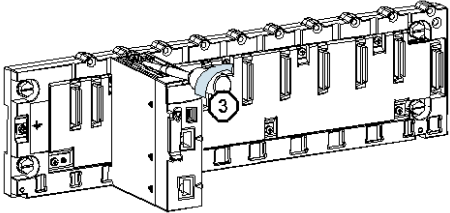


NOTE: Before installing a module, remove the protective cap from the module connector located on the backplane.

Mounting Instructions

NOTE: The mechanical assembly instructions for the BMXNOE01x0 modules and the BMXP3420x0 controllers are identical.

To mount a module or controller on the backplane:

Step	Action	Illustration
1	Position the two pins on the reverse side of the module or controller (at the bottom) in the corresponding slots on the backplane. Note: Before positioning the pins, make sure you have removed the protective cover.	The following diagram describes steps 1 and 2: 
2	Incline the module or controller towards the top of the backplane so that the module sits flush with the back of the backplane. It is now set in position.	The following diagram describes step 3: 
3	Tighten the safety screw to ensure that the module or controller is held in place on the backplane. The tightening torque is between 0.4 and 1.5 Nm .	

Grounding Installed Modules

Introduction

The grounding of M340 modules is crucial to avoid electric shock.

Grounding Controllers and Power Supply Modules

If the ground connection contacts are bent or absent, do not use the module and contact your Schneider Electric representative.

DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION, OR ARC FLASH

Ensure ground connection contacts are present and not bent out of shape.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

A break in the circuit could lead to an unintended equipment operation.

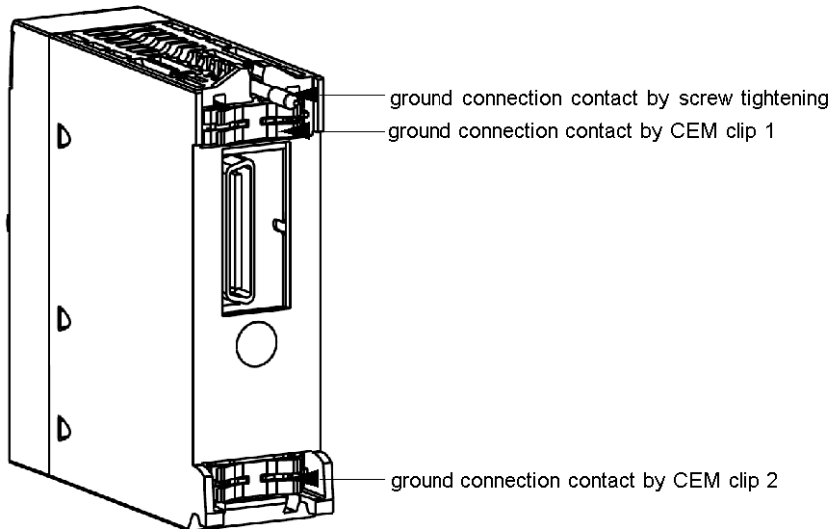
WARNING

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

Tighten the clamping screws of the modules.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

M340 modules are equipped with ground connection contacts at the rear for grounding purposes:



These contacts connect the grounding bus of the modules to the grounding bus of the backplane.

Memory Cards

Introduction

This topic discusses the memory cards that are available for M340 controllers and BMXNOE01x0 modules.

NOTICE

LOSS OF DATA

- Do not remove the memory card from the module while the controller is running.
- Remove the memory card only when the power is off.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

Elsewhere in this guide is a discussion of the card location on the modules, page 22.

Card Functionality

The following table describes the functionality of the various memory cards when inserted in M340 controllers and BMXNOE01x0 modules:

Memory card part	Functionality		
	BMXP34 controllers	BMXNOE01x0	Comment
BMXRMS008MP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • application backup • web server activation on the embedded Ethernet port (Transparent Ready class B) 	—	Delivered with the BMX P34 controllers.
BMXRMS008MPF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • application backup • web server activation on the embedded Ethernet port (Transparent Ready class B) • 8 MB file storage (usability) 	—	Order separately.
BMXRMS128MPF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • application backup • web server activation on the embedded Ethernet port (Transparent Ready class B) • 128 MB file storage (usability) 	—	Order separately.
BMXRWSB000M	—	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • services for Transparent Ready class B30 	Delivered with the BMXNOE0100 module.
BMXRWSF016M	—	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • services for Transparent Ready class C30 • web page memory (16 MB) 	No longer sold. (Can be updated to BMXRWSFC016M.)
BMXRWSFC016M	—	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • services for Transparent Ready class C30 • *FactoryCast services • web page memory (16 MB) 	Delivered with the BMXNOE0110 module. This card is required for user-customizable web pages and FactoryCast services.
<p>Note: See the detailed discussions for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ethernet service classes A, B, C, and D, page 326 • Class C services for the BMXNOE0100 module, page 326 			

Card Services

Write-protected cards may prevent some services from operating properly.

⚠ WARNING

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

Do not use a write-protected memory card with the module.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

The memory card needs a structure to contain program and data. Formatting with an inappropriate tool removes this structure.

NOTICE

INOPERABLE MEMORY CARD

Do not format the memory card with a non-Schneider Electric tool.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

The following table lists the services that are available when the memory card is inserted in various M340 modules:

Memory card	Module	Program backup	File storage	FDR server	Web server class	Factory-Cast
BMXRMS008MP	BMXP341000	Yes	No	—	—	—
	BMXP342000	Yes	No	—	—	—
	BMXP342010	Yes	No	—	—	—
	BMXP3420102	Yes	No	—	—	—
	BMXP342020	Yes	No	No	B	—
	BMXP342030	Yes	No	No	B	—
	BMXP3420302	Yes	No	No	B	—
BMXRMS008MPF	BMXP341000	Yes	No	—	—	—
	BMXP342000	Yes	Yes	—	—	—
	BMXP342010/ 20102	Yes	Yes	—	—	—
	BMXP342020	Yes	Yes	No	B	—
	BMXP342030/ 20302	Yes	Yes	No	B	—
BMXRMS128MPF	BMXP341000	Yes	No	—	—	—
	BMXP342000	Yes	Yes	—	—	—
	BMXP342010/ 20102	Yes	Yes	—	—	—
	BMXP342020	Yes	Yes	No	B	—
	BMXP342030/ 20302	Yes	Yes	No	B	—
BMXRWSB000M	BMXNOE0100	—	—	Yes	B	—
BMXRWSC016M	BMXNOE0100	—	—	Yes	C	—

B = embedded web page

C = user-customized web page

Elsewhere in this guide is a description of the web server classes, page 326.

NOTE: The NOE module works only with a memory card that is present at boot-up time. A memory card that is inserted during NOE operations is not recognized.

Although operation is possible without a valid memory card inserted in the module, a valid memory card should be present at all times to help ensure correct operation of the module and all its services.

Card Compatibility with NOE Versions

The following table lists the compatibility issues between memory card versions and BMXNOE01x0 module versions:

Memory card →	BMXRWS-C016M Class C V1	BMXRWSC016M upgraded to FactoryCast V1.1	BMXRWS-C016M upgraded to FactoryCast V2	BMXRWSF-C032M V1.1	BMXRWSF-C032M V2	BMXRWS-B000M Class B
NOE ↓						
NOE0100 firmware V1	Compatible	*Incompatible	*Incompatible	*Incompatible	Not supported	Compatible
NOE0100 firmware V2	Compatible (with a V1 application)	*Incompatible	*Incompatible	Not supported	Not supported	Compatible (with a V1 application)
NOE0110 firmware V1	Not supported	Compatible	Not supported	Compatible	Not supported	Compatible
NOE0110 firmware V2	Not supported	Not supported	Compatible	Not supported	Compatible	Compatible (with a V1 application)

* In these cases, the Web server is embedded in the memory card, then loaded into the NOE module. At start-up, the NOE will block this memory card.

Card Compatibility with Controller Versions

The following table lists the compatibility issues between memory card versions and BMXP3420•0 controller versions:

Memory card →	BMXRMS008MP / MPF web pages V1 or V1.1	BMXRMS008MP / MPF web pages V2
Controller ↓		
Controller firmware V1	Compatible	Compatible (with a V1 application)
Controller firmware V2 (with an application for a controller V1)	Compatible (with a V1 application)	Compatible (with a V1 application)
Controller firmware V2 (with an application for a controller V2)	Compatible	Compatible

Precautions

To keep the memory card in normal working order, follow these precautions:

NOTICE

INOPERABLE MEMORY CARD

- Do not remove the memory card from its slot when the module is accessing it (green access LED on or flashing).
- Do not touch the memory card connections.
- Keep the memory card away from electrostatic and electromagnetic sources as well as heat, sunlight, water, and moisture.
- Keep the door to the memory card slot closed while the module is running.
- Avoid impacts to the memory card.
- Verify the postal service security policy before sending a memory card by postal service.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

NOTE: In some countries, the postal service exposes mail to high levels of radiation, as a security measure. These high levels of radiation may erase the contents of the memory card and render it unusable.

Memory Card Features

Introduction

This topic discusses the features and services provided by Schneider Electric memory cards for M340 controllers and BMXNOE01x0 modules.

Card Features

The following table describes the features and services of the different memory cards when inserted in M340 controllers and BMXNOE01x0 modules:

	Memory card	BMXRMS008MP / BMXRMS008MPF / BMXRMS128MPF	BMXRWSB000M	BMXRWSFC032M
	Module	BMXP342020/2030/ 20302	BMXNOE0100	BMXNOE0110
	TR class level	B	B	C
Monitoring	Data Editor	X	X	X
	Data Editor Lite	X	X	X
	Graphic Editor	-	-	X
	Graphic Viewer	-	-	X
	Symbol, unlocated access	-	-	X
	Custom web pages	-	-	X
Diagnostic	Ethernet services Lite	X	X	-
	Ethernet services	-	-	X
	Rack Viewer Lite	X	X	-
	Multi-Rack Viewer	-	-	X
	Zoom module in backplane	X	-	X
	Zoom bus CANopen	X	-	X
	Alarm Viewer	-	-	X
Setup	HTTP security	X	X	X
	FTP security	-	-	X
FactoryCast	SOAP XML support	-	-	X
	RDE on Pocket PC	-	-	X
	Widget library	-	-	X
	NTP	-	-	-
	FTP	-	X	X
	Web Designer support	-	-	X
Legend				
X: service is present				
—: service is not available				

NOTE: You can update the content of the BMXRWSC016M card to include the features and services of the BMXRWSFC032M card using Unity Loader.

Without Memory Card

If no memory card is inserted in the module, you cannot access the website. The following error message appears: **Access Error: Site temporary unavailable. Try again. No SD card present.**

Also, if no memory card is inserted in the module:

- The address server does not work (NOE modules only).
- NTP has no time zone files (NOE modules only).
- Unity Loader does not work (NOE modules and controllers).

Wiring Considerations

The Link

The following situations can create a temporary disruption in the application or communications:

- The RJ45 10/100 BASE-T interface connector gets connected or disconnected when the power is on.
- Modules are re-initialized when the power is switched back on.

Ethernet Communications

What's in This Part

IP Parameters	58
Multi-Module Communication.....	68
Description of Ethernet Communications Services.....	76

About this Part

This part describes Ethernet communications.

IP Parameters

What’s in This Chapter

Methods for IP Addressing 58
 Rotary Switches..... 60
 Deriving IP Parameters from the MAC Address 62
 IP Address Assignment Process 63
 Ethernet Port Status..... 65

Introduction

This chapter describes the assignment of IP parameters to the BMXNOE01x0 and BMXP3420x0 controllers. Each network address must be valid and unique on the network.

Elsewhere in this guide you can find information about:

- address management for Ethernet modules, page 310
- IP address classes, page 319

Methods for IP Addressing

Addressing Methods

The M340 modules and controllers with Ethernet functionality can have their addresses set through the rotary switches, page 60, the Control Expert IP Configuration tab, page 138, and combinations of the two:

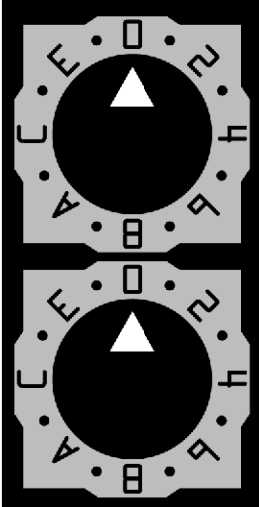
Address method	Description
STORED	The lower rotary switch is set to STORED (manufacturer default setting), and the module uses the application configured parameters.
Device name (over DHCP)	There are two components of the device name: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • default device name of the module: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ BMX2020_xxy (BMXP342020 controller) ◦ BMX2030_xxy (BMXP342030/20302 controller) ◦ BMX0100_xxy (BMXNOE0100 and BMXPRA0100 modules) ◦ BMX0110_xxy (BMXNOE0110 module) • numeric value between 00 and 159 set on the rotary switches, page 60

Address method	Description
	<p>(For the default device name, xx is the value of the upper rotary switch and y is the value of the lower rotary switch.)</p> <p>Example: For a BMXNOE0100 module, values of 120 (12 x 10) and 6 (6 x 1) on the respective upper and lower rotary switches indicate a value of 126. The value is appended to the default device name (BMX0100_<i>xy</i>) to create the valid DHCP device name of BMX0100_126.</p>
CLEAR IP	<p>The lower rotary switch is set to CLEAR IP, and the module uses its MAC-based default IP address, page 62.</p>
BOOTP	<p>Set the lower rotary switch, page 60 to one of its BOOTP positions to get an address over BOOTP (see note).</p> <p>Note: To configure the module in the application to get its address from a BOOTP server, see the following <i>from a server</i> row.</p>
From a server (STORED)	<p>A server-assigned IP address can then be obtained from either a BOOTP or DHCP server, page 81.</p> <p>BOOTP:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set the lower rotary switch to one of its STORED positions. • Select From a server on the IP Configuration tab, page 138. • Leave the Device Name field empty. <p>DHCP:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set the lower rotary switch to one of its STORED positions. • Select From a server on the IP Configuration tab, page 138. • Enter a valid device name in the Device Name field. <p>Note: The M340 Ethernet modules will not receive an IP address from a BOOTP/DHCP server on application download if the IP configuration has not changed.</p>
Disabled	<p>Communications are disabled.</p>
<p>Note: An error can be detected when the assigned address is a mismatch for the address in the application. Details of these errors are at Ethernet Port Status, page 65.</p>	

Rotary Switches

Introduction

The BMXNOE01•0 module or BMXP3420x0 controller operates as a single node on an Ethernet LAN and possibly other networks. The module must have a unique IP address. The two rotary switches on the back of the module provide a simple way to select an IP address:



NOTE: Set the arrow firmly into the desired position. If you do not feel the switch click into place, the value of the switch may be incorrect or undetermined.

Summary of Valid IP Address Settings

Each rotary switch position that you can use to set a valid IP address is marked on the module. The following information summarizes the valid address settings:

- **Device name:** For a switch-set device name, select a numeric value from 00 to 159. You can use both switches:
 - On the upper switch (Tens digit), the available settings are 0 to 15.
 - On the lower switch (Ones digit), the available settings are 0 to 9.

The device name is calculated from the sum of the two switch values. For example, a BMXP342020 controller with the switch setting in the above figure is assigned the DHCP device name **BMX2020_123**.

The selection on the lower switch of any non-numeric (**BOOTP**, **STORED**, **CLEAR IP**, **DISABLED**) makes the setting on the upper switch inconsequential.

- **BOOTP:** To get an IP address from a BOOTP server, select either of the two BOOTP positions on the bottom switch.
- **STORED:** The device uses the application’s configured (stored) parameters.
- **CLEAR IP:** The device uses the default IP parameters.
- **DISABLED:** The device does not respond to communications.

The functionality of the rotary switch when used in conjunction with the Control Expert IP Configuration tab, page 138 is discussed throughout the IP Address chapter, page 58.

Switch Labels

To assist you in setting the rotary switches to their proper positions, a label is affixed to the right side of the module. The switch settings are described in this table:

	<p>Upper Switch</p>
	<p>0 to 9: Tens value for the device name (0, 10, 20 . . . 90)</p>
	<p>10(A) to 15(F): Tens value for the device name (100, 110, 120 . . . 150)</p>
	<p>Lower Switch</p>
	<p>0 to 9: Ones value for the device name (0, 1, 2 . . . 9)</p>
	<p>BOOTP: Set the switch to A or B to receive an IP address from a BOOTP server.</p>
	<p>Stored: Set the switch to C or D to use the application’s configured (stored) parameters.</p>
<p>Clear IP: Set the switch to E to use the default IP parameters.</p>	
<p>Disabled: Set the switch to F to disable communications.</p>	

Deriving IP Parameters from the MAC Address

Introduction

If no IP parameters are received from the application when the rotary switch, page 60 is set to **Stored** or **Clear IP** positions, the module is configured at power-up with its default IP address. The default IP address for the module is derived from its hardware MAC address in accordance with a default IP address format.

Default IP Address Format

The default IP address format is $84.x.y.z$:

- 84 : a fixed value
- $x.y.z$: The last three fields in the default IP address correspond to the decimal equivalents of the last three bytes in the MAC address.

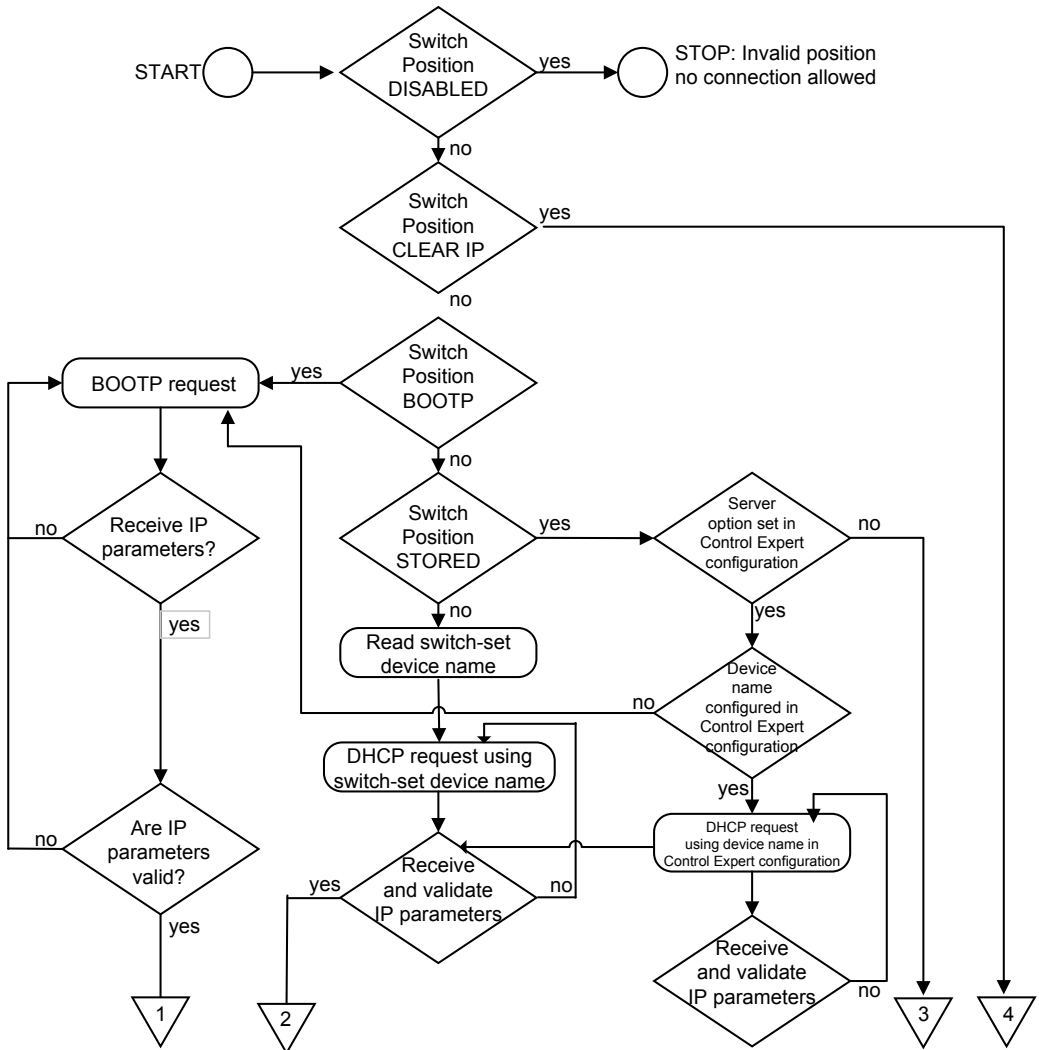
Example

For example a device with $00-00-53-12-01-C4$ MAC address has the following default IP address: $84.18.1.196$ (12 hex = 18 dec, 01 hex = 1 dec, $C4$ hex = 196 dec).

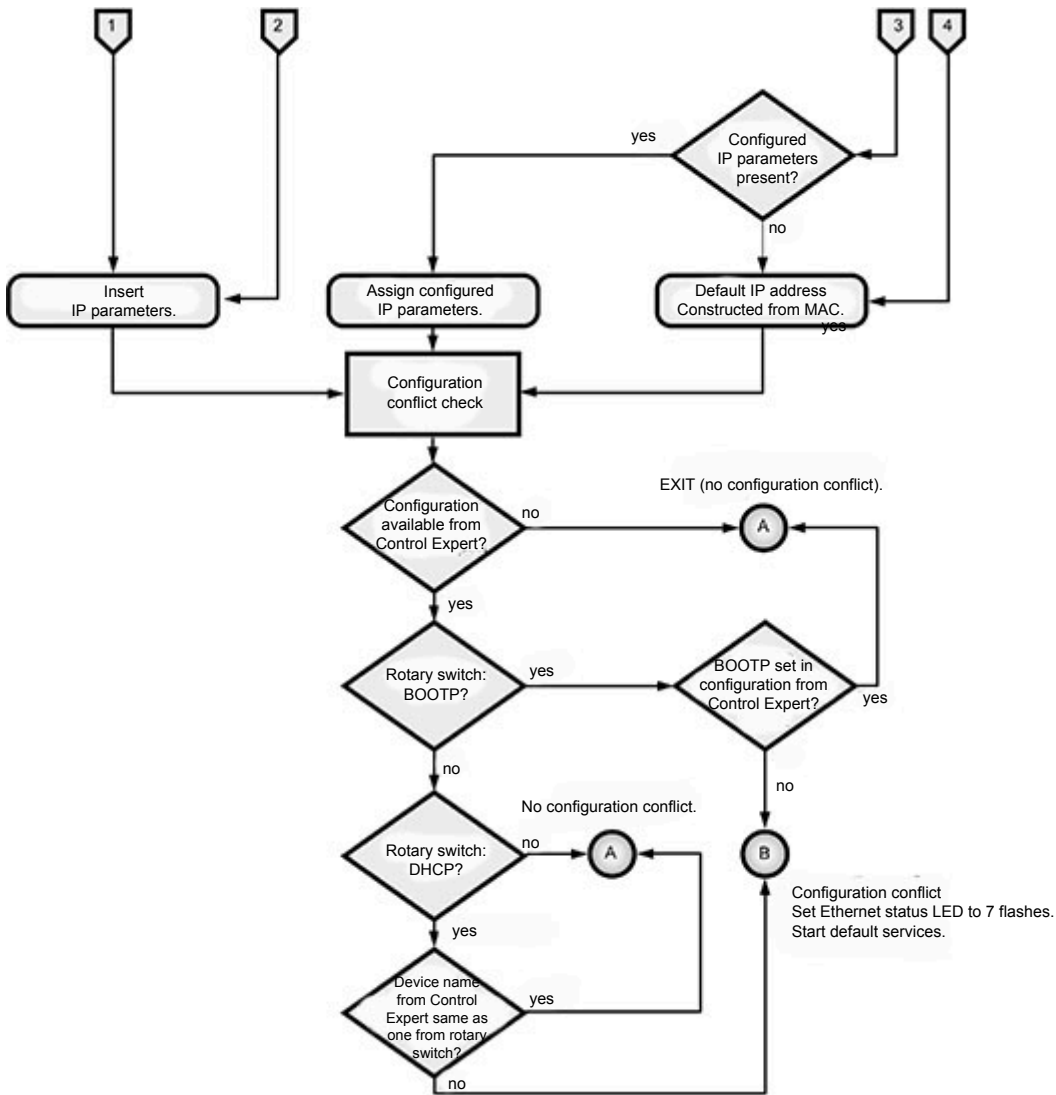
IP Address Assignment Process

Determining the IP Address

The IP addressing methods for the M340 modules are shown in the following figure:



IP address assignment (continued):



Frame Format Priorities

The module supports communications in the Ethernet II and 802.3 frame formats. (Ethernet II is the default.) When communicating with a BOOTP or DHCP server, the module makes four requests based on the configured frame type. To avoid flooding the server with

simultaneous requests, the transmission time of each request is based on the back-off algorithms defined by the respective BOOTP and DHCP RFCs.

NOTE: In addition, modules that communicate with DHCP servers make requests in this order:

- first: 4 requests in the DHCP format defined by RFC 2132
- second: 4 requests in the DHCP format defined by RFC 1533

Ethernet Port Status

Port Status

The status of the Ethernet port depends on the IP address configuration in the application and the setting on the rotary switches, page 60:

Application	Switch setting				
	DHCP (device name from rotary switches)	BOOTP	STORED	CLEAR IP	DISABLED
None	DEFAULT: Get IP address. (1)	DEFAULT: Get IP address. (1)	DEFAULT: Use default IP address. (1)	DEFAULT: This switch setting implements device default IP parameters regardless of the application type.	LED off. This switch setting stops communications between the module and the network, so the application type is inconsequential.
Configured	MISMATCH: Get IP address. (1)	MISMATCH: Get IP address. (1)	NO ERROR: Get IP address from application. (2)		
From a server without device name (3)	NO ERROR: Get IP address. (2)	NO ERROR: Get IP address. (2)	NO ERROR: Get IP address with BOOTP. (2)		
From a server with device name	NO ERROR: Get IP address. Device name derived from switches (2) (5)	MISMATCH: Get IP address. (1)	NO ERROR: Get IP address with DHCP (device name from application). (2)(4)		
<p>Note 1: Start default services only.</p> <p>Note 2: Start application-configured services.</p> <p>Note 3: Leaving the From a server/Device Name field empty on the IP Configuration tab, page 138 facilitates communications that are compatible with any rotary switch setting.</p> <p>Note 4: To use the device name from the IP Configuration tab, page 138 in the Control Expert application, the lower rotary switch must be set to one of its STORED positions.</p> <p>Note 5: When the server returns a name that matches the one you configure on the IP Configuration tab, page 138, communications are OK. When there is a mismatch, a communication error is detected.</p> <p>Note 6: The M340 Ethernet modules do not receive an IP address from a BOOTP/DHCP server on application download if the IP configuration has not changed.</p>					

Elsewhere in this guide is a detailed discussion about deriving the default IP address, page 62.

Device Name

The communications port can enter the idle state when the position of the rotary switches does not match the port network configuration in the application. For example, the switches may be set to BOOTP or DHCP while the application calls for a fixed IP address.

⚠ WARNING

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

Ensure that the position of the rotary switches matches the port network configuration in the application.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

The device name generated by the rotary switch setting follows this format:

- BMXP342020 controller: BMX_2020_*xy*
- BMXP342030/20302 controller: BMX_2030_*xy*
- BMXNOE0100 module: BMX_0100_*xy*
- BMXNOE0110 module: BMX_0110_*xy*

(Note that *xx* is the value of the upper rotary switch and *y* is the value of the lower rotary switch.)

NOTE: For information about how the module prioritizes IP addressing options, refer to the discussion on IP address assignment, page 58.

Multi-Module Communication

What's in This Chapter

Multi-Module Communication.....	68
---------------------------------	----

Overview

This chapter describes communication capabilities across modules and devices in a controller configuration.

Multi-Module Communication

Overview

This topic explains communication capabilities across modules and devices in a controller configuration. Different modules and devices are available providing access to USB, Modbus, and/or Ethernet communication:

- Controller devices with embedded USB, Modbus, and/or Ethernet ports
- NOE modules for Ethernet communication

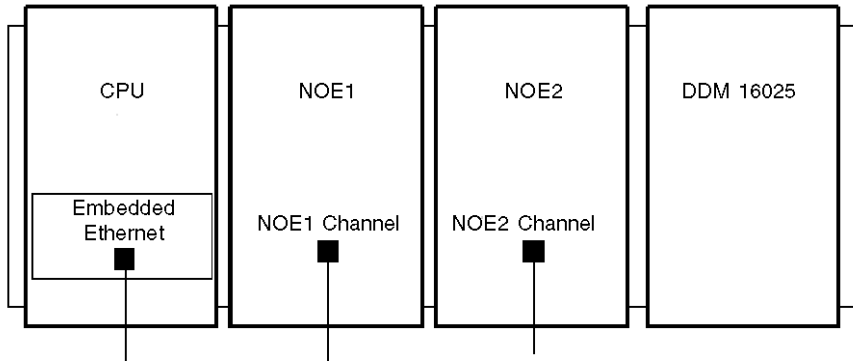
Configuration Guidelines

A maximum of two NOE modules can be installed on a controller configuration.

Therefore, the maximum number of configured Ethernet links is three:

- one link via the controller with embedded Ethernet port
- two links via the NOE modules (More are not allowed, even if the controller configured has no Ethernet port.)

The following illustration shows a possible configuration:



This example describes a backplane with four modules:

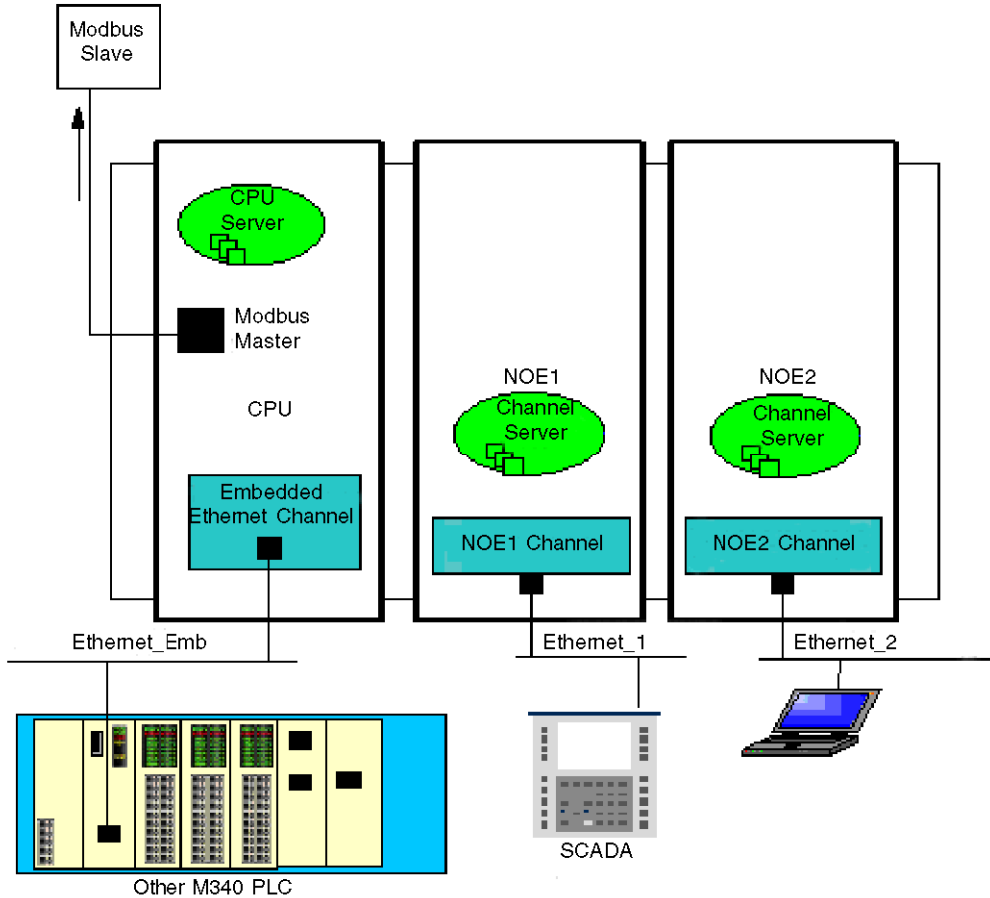
- the controller at backplane module address [0.0]
- the NOE1 at backplane module address [0.1]
- the NOE2 at backplane module address [0.2]
- an I/O module or function module (In this example, we show a DDM16025 discrete module at backplane module address [0.3].)

NOTE: To define the backplane/slot combination [x.x]:

- first digit = backplane number
- second digit = slot number

Communication Overview and Definitions

The following illustration presents the overall installation:



In this example, there are:

- two NOE modules that are connected to two different Ethernet networks
- a controller that is connected to a third Ethernet network and a Modbus server

The following table defines the terms that are used to describe communication methods using multiple communication modules:

Term	Definition
Channel	Represents the communication channel itself, able to manage the dispatching of the messaging flow.
Channel Server	A server dedicated to the management of the communication channel itself. For example, it provides statistical information on an Ethernet link. Control Expert accesses this server to display information related to an NOE module, for example.
Controller server	This server answers all requests sent to the controller, whatever the communication media used to access it.

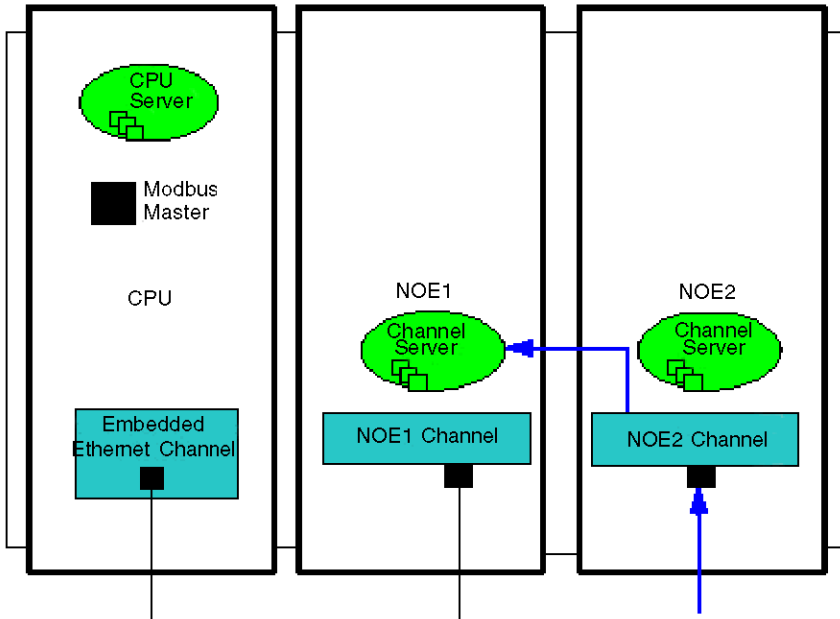
Routing Table

The following table describes the communication capabilities across the different modules:

Destination →	NOE1 channel server	NOE1 channel	NOE2 channel server	NOE2 channel	Controller Ethernet channel	Controller Modbus client
Source ↓						
NOE1 channel	supported	not supported	supported	not supported	not supported	supported
NOE2 channel	supported	not supported	supported	not supported	not supported	supported
Controller Ethernet	supported	not supported	supported	not supported	not supported	supported
Controller USB	supported	supported	supported	supported	supported	supported
Controller Modbus server	supported	supported	supported	supported	supported	not supported

Example 1: NOE2 Channel to NOE1 Channel Server

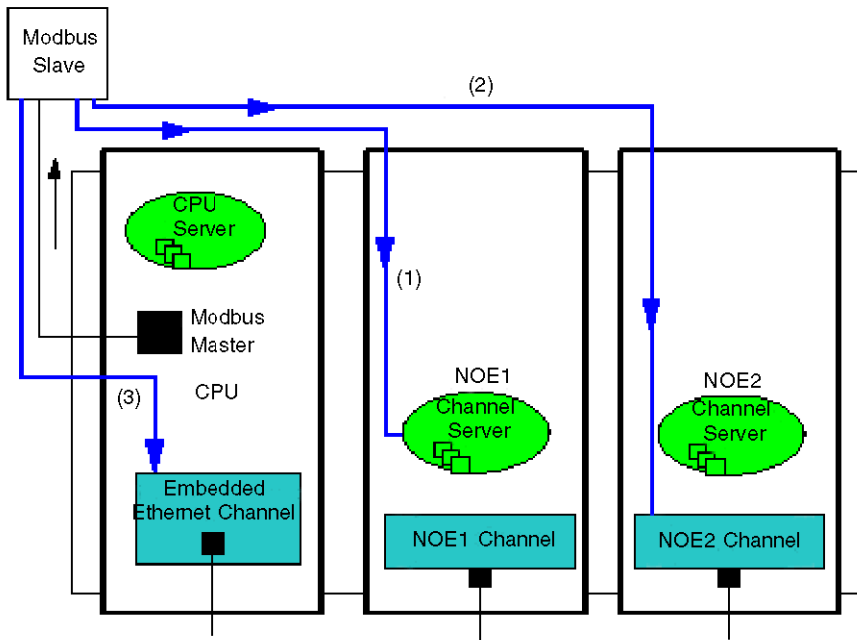
The following illustration describes the connection from an NOE2 channel (source) to an NOE1 channel server (destination). The same methodology can be implemented from an NOE1 channel to an NOE2 channel server:



Example 2: Controller Modbus Server to NOE Channel, NOE Server Channel, Controller Ethernet Channel

This example describes the connection from a controller Modbus server to:

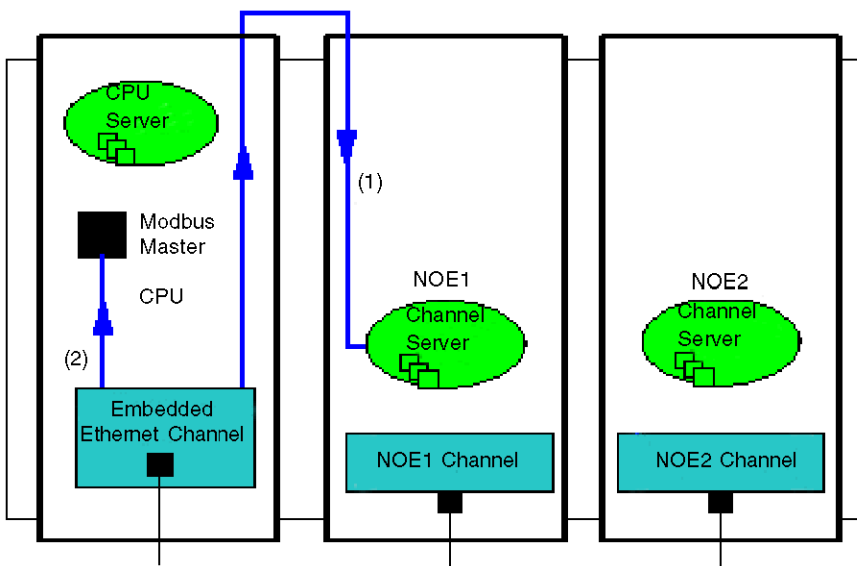
- an NOE1 channel server (1)
- an NOE2 channel (2)
- a controller Ethernet channel (3)



Example 3: Controller Ethernet to NOE Channel Server, Controller Modbus Client

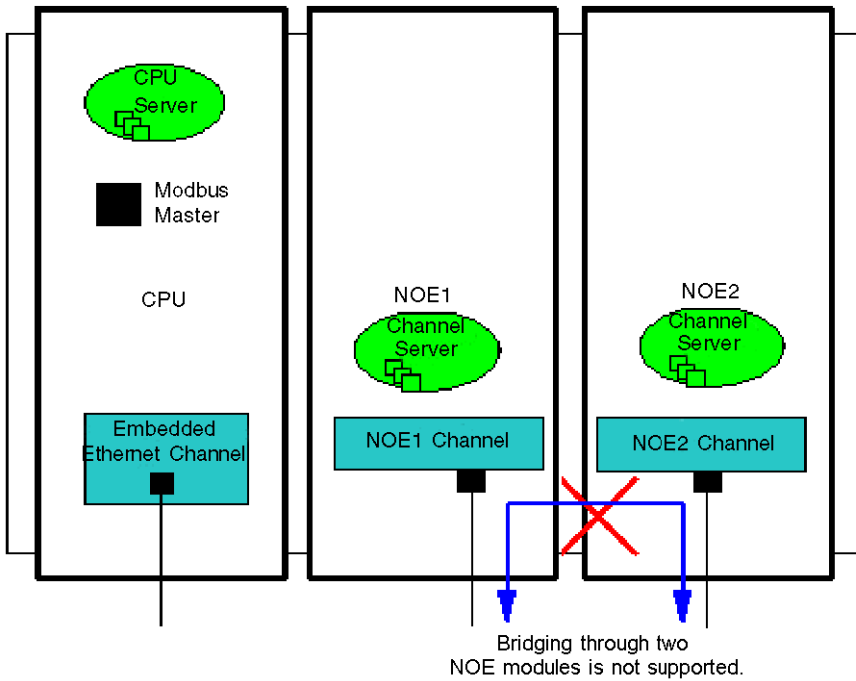
This example describes the connection from a controller Ethernet to:

- an NOE1 channel server (1)
- a controller Modbus client (2)



Example 4: Not Supported - NOE1 Channel to NOE2 Channel Channel Not Supported

This example illustrates a configuration that is not supported with communication from an NOE1 channel to an NOE2 channel:



Description of Ethernet Communications Services

What's in This Chapter

I/O Scanning Service	76
Address Assignment through DHCP and BOOTP	81
SNMP	86
Global Data	91
Fast Device Replacement.....	93
Bandwidth Monitoring.....	95
TCP/IP Messaging.....	97
Time Synchronization Service.....	100
Electronic Mail Notification Service.....	105

Overview

This chapter briefly describes the services that are available for M340 modules that support Ethernet communications (BMXNOE01x0 modules and BMXP3420x0 controllers).

NOTE: Not all services are available for all modules at all times. Elsewhere in this guide is a list of the services that are available for each Ethernet communications module, page 42.

I/O Scanning Service

Introduction

This section presents functions, characteristics, and configuration options for the I/O scanning service.

I/O Scanning Service

Introduction

The I/O Scanner is used to periodically:

- read remote inputs
- write remote outputs
- read/write remote outputs

NOTE: In the Modbus serial port of the following modules in an M340 or M580 local rack, the total size of remote variables to read or write must be limited to 253 bytes because of the limitation of the PDU (protocol data unit):

- BMXP341000 controller
- BMXP342000 controller
- BMXP342010 controller
- BMXP3420102 controller
- BMXP342020 controller
- BMXNOM0200 network option module (does not apply to modules in RIO drops)

The I/O Scanner is used to periodically read or write remote inputs and outputs on the Ethernet network without specific programming.

Configure the I/O Scanner with [Control Expert](#), page 144.

NOTE: I/O scanning is not supported by the Ethernet port of BMX P34 20x0 CPUs.

Characteristics

This service comprises the following essential elements:

- **read zone:** the values of remote inputs
- **write zone:** the values of remote outputs
- **scanning periods:** independent of the PLC cycle and specific to each remote device

During operation, the module:

- manages the TCP/IP connections with each remote device
- scans inputs and copies their values into the configured %MW word zone
- scans outputs and copies their values from the configured %MW word zone
- reports status words so that correct operation of the service can be monitored by the PLC application
- applies the preconfigured fallback values (in the event of a communication problem)
- enables or disables each entry in the I/O scanner table in accordance with its application

Typical Use

Scanning is performed only when the PLC is in Run mode.

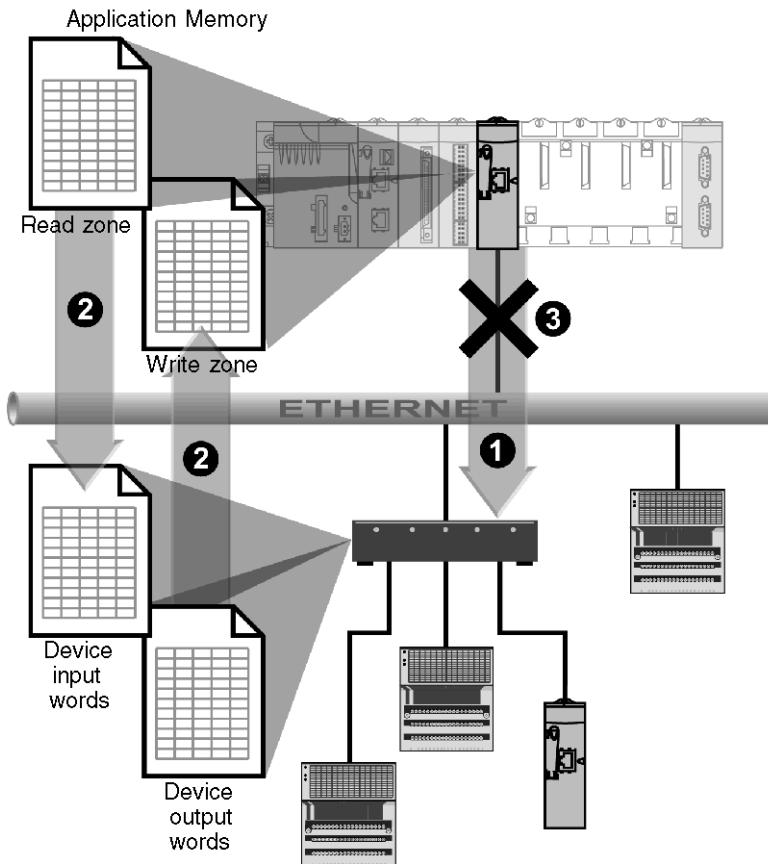
This service operates with all devices that support Modbus TCP/IP server mode.

The exchange mechanism, which is transparent to the user, is executed with these request types (as long as the remote devices support them):

- read
- write
- read and write

I/O Scanner Operation

This figure illustrates the scanning of remote inputs and outputs:



1 As soon as the PLC switches to Run mode, the module successfully opens a connection for each scanned device. (One connection is made for each line entered in the table of scanned devices.)

2 Then the module periodically reads input words and reads/writes output words for each device.

3 If the PLC switches to Stop mode, the connections to all devices are closed.

Summary of Functionality

The I/O scanning service:

- manages the connection with each remote device (one connection per remote device)
- scans the inputs/outputs of the device using Modbus read/write requests on the TCP/IP server mode
- updates the read and write zones in the application memory
- refreshes the status bits for each remote device

Each I/O Scanner device can be enabled/disabled, page 173.

NOTE: These status bits show whether the module input/output words have been refreshed.

Read and Write Zones

The Zones

Within the application memory, the I/O scanning service defines:

- %MW word zone: reserved for reading inputs
- %MW word zone: reserved for writing outputs
- refresh periods: independent of the PLC scan

The read and write zones associated with the Ethernet module are tables of internal words (%MW) that contiguously group all input and output word values for connected remote devices. Remote input and output devices are supplied with:

- input words: used to send back the values of the inputs to the module
- output words: used to assign the value of the outputs to the remote device

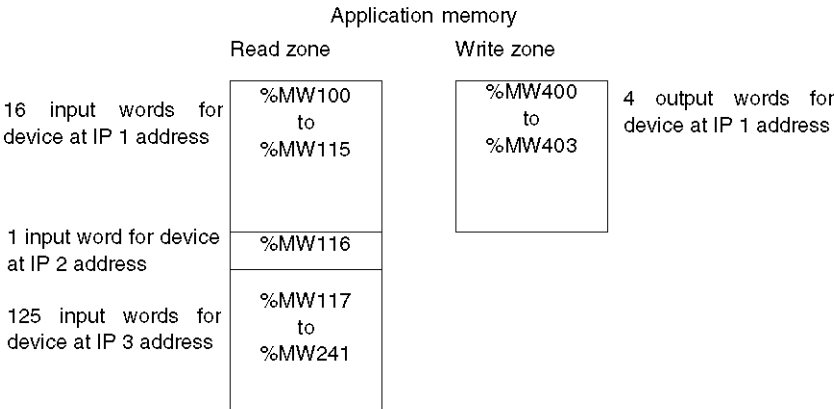
NOTE: Refer to the documentation for each device for the number and details of input and output words to be managed.

Example

In this example, the Ethernet module scans three devices:

- a Momentum module at address IP1 (type 170 AA1 140 00: 16 analogue inputs; this module has 16 input words and 4 output words)
- a Momentum module at address IP2 (type 170 AA1 340 00: 16 discrete inputs; this module has one input word)
- a Premium PLC with 125 input words at address IP3

The read zone begins at %MW100 and the write zone at %MW400.



NOTE: The fields dedicated to remote devices must not have any overlap. Equally, the read and write zones must not have any overlap.

NOTE: Not all devices can be write-scanned by multiple modules. Check the remote device documentation to see if it can be accessed by the I/O Scanner.

Address Assignment through DHCP and BOOTP

About this Section

This section explains how the BMX NOE 01x0 modules or the Ethernet ports on the BMX P34 20x0 CPUs get their IP addresses through DHCP or BOOTP, network protocols that can dynamically assign IP addresses to network devices.

Address Assignment through DHCP/BOOTP

Introduction

This topic discusses the manner in which a BMX NOE 01x0 modules or the Ethernet port of a BMX P34 20x0 CPUs get an IP address from a DHCP/BOOTP server.

NOTE: Before attempting to get an IP address from a DHCP/BOOTP server, obtain the appropriate network address and subnetwork mask from your system administrator.

NOTE: The BMX NOE 01x0 module will not get an IP address from a DHCP/BOOTP server while downloading an application if the IP configuration has not changed.

Address Request and Reply

This table explains how a DHCP/BOOTP client (like an Ethernet module or CPUs with Ethernet ports) gets an IP address:

Step	Action
1	<p>The module supports communications in the Ethernet II and 802.3 frame formats. (Ethernet II is the default.) When communicating with a DHCP or BOOTP server, the module makes 4 requests based on the configured frame type. To avoid flooding the server with simultaneous requests, the transmission time of each request is based on the backoff algorithms defined by the respective DHCP and BOOTP RFCs.</p> <p>Note: In addition, modules that communicate with DHCP servers make requests in this order:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • first: 4 requests in the DHCP format defined by RFC 2132 • second: 4 requests in the DHCP format defined by RFC 1533
2	<p>The remote device acting as the DHCP/BOOTP address server responds to this request and assigns to the client module:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • an IP address • the gateway IP address • the corresponding subnetwork mask
<p>Note: The display of this information from a browser connected on the HTML pages of the rack display on the web server is not constantly updated. Therefore, connect a Control Expert application on the correct PLC to obtain the actual values.</p>	

In the absence of an address server or if there is no server response, the client module can not get a stable IP address. Therefore, its services are not available. The client continues to issue periodic BOOTP/DHCP requests until it receives a response from the server.

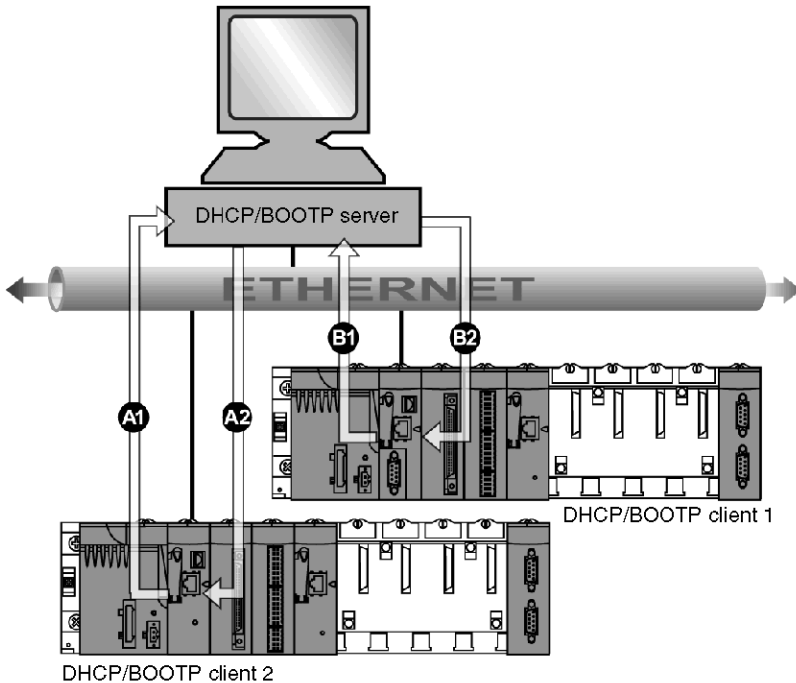
NOTE: Setting the rotary switch position to Clear IP is one way to force the client module to use its default IP address to start basic services, including Modbus TCP messaging.

These concepts are graphically represented in the IP address assignment process flowchart, page 63.

Modicon M340 DHCP/BOOTP Example

Example

This figure shows the routing of requests during start-up of a device on a network:



A1 request from BMX NOE 0100 at device name 2

A2 response from DHCP/BOOTP server

B1 request from BMX P34 2030 at MAC1 address

B2 response from DHCP/BOOTP server

The DHCP server in the above figure contains the following table:

MAC Address	IP Address
MAC1 Address	IP1 Address
device name 2	IP2 Address
MAC3 Address	IP3 Address

MAC Address	IP Address
device name 4	IP4 Address
...	...

BMX NOE 01x0 as a DHCP Server

About DHCP

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) manages network parameters for network devices. Individual devices can get network IP configurations from a DHCP server. To do so, the device includes its device name in the request to the server.

The BMX NOE 01x0 modules (with [memory card](#), [page 49](#) required) can be configured as a DHCP server only after the station power is cycled. It can also have its address configured by the user or dynamically allocated from an address server when the device is configured as a DHCP/BOOTP client.

NOTE:

- Before attempting to get an IP address from a DHCP server, obtain the appropriate network address and subnet mask from your system administrator.
- Because DHCP is built on BOOTP functionality, [page 81](#), a DHCP server can respond to BOOTP protocol requests.

Server Response

The server responds to client requests and sends them their IP address configurations.

To do this, the server device has a table, which groups:

- correspondence between the MAC addresses or the Names (device names) of the client stations and the IP addresses
- the Netmask and the Gateway
- the names and access paths to the parameter files

NOTE: The server on the BMX NOE 01x0 supplies network configuration data only to client stations connected to the LAN. Talk to your system administrator about LAN connections on your network.

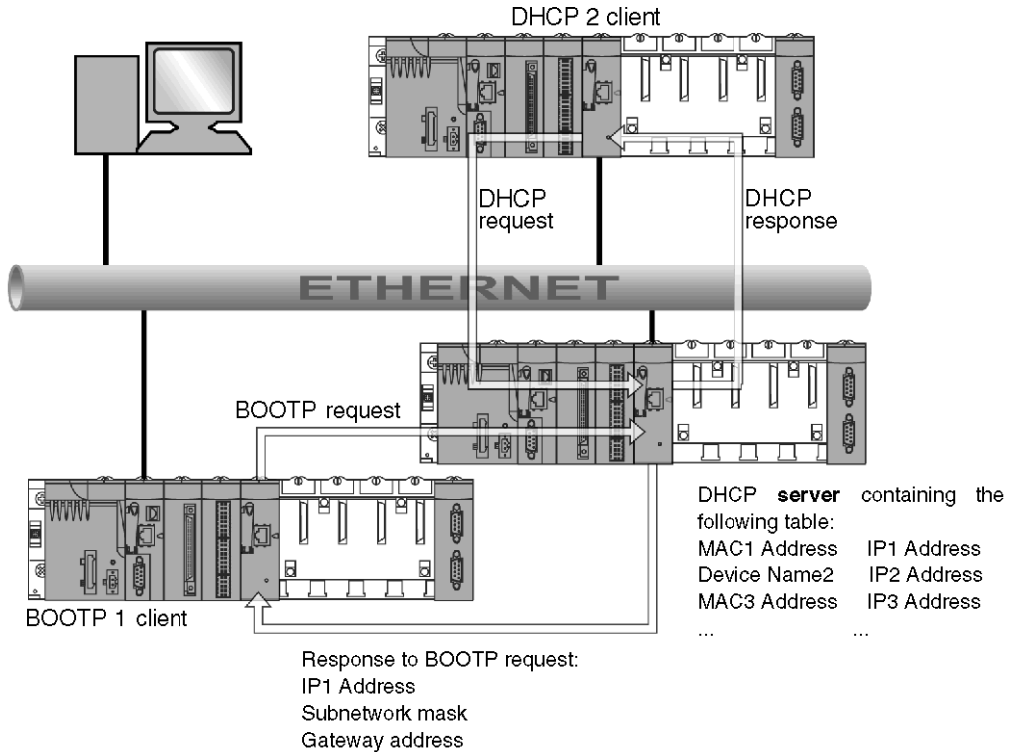
You may experience a time delay for DHCP server responses if your DHCP server module is busy with other higher priority services (such as IO Scanning, Global Data, or Modbus Messaging):

- For general DHCP server use (such as IP address configuration), the maximum server performance is achieved through the use of a dedicated DHCP server.
- If you plan to use the Fast Device Replacement (FDR) service, configure a dedicated Schneider Electric Ethernet module with an FDR server for maximum performance.

NOTE: Do not configure the controller to automatically start in RUN mode when a module acts as a server for starting scanned devices. Otherwise, some devices (such as Momentum 170s) may not obtain IP addresses when the DHCP server restarts.

Example of DHCP Server

This figure shows request routing during the response to a start-up request from the client:



NOTE: The subnetwork mask and the address of the gateway are provided by the DHCP server.

SNMP

About this Section

This section describes the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP).

SNMP and Schneider Private MIB Overview

Introduction

An SNMP agent runs on:

- Ethernet communication modules
- CPUs with embedded Ethernet communications ports

Network management systems use SNMP to monitor and control Ethernet architecture components for the rapid network diagnosis.

Network management systems allows a network manager to:

- monitor and control network components
- isolate troubles and find their causes
- query devices, such as host computer(s), routers, switches, and bridges, to determine their status
- obtain statistics about the networks to which they are attached

NOTE: Network management systems are available from a variety of vendors. Schneider Electric provides an SNMP-based diagnostics tool called ConneXview.

Simple Network Management Protocol

Ethernet communication modules support SNMP, the standard protocol for managing local area networks (LANs). SNMP defines exactly how a manager communicates with an agent. SNMP defines the format of:

- requests that a manager sends to an agent
- replies that the agent returns to the manager

The MIB

The set of objects that SNMP can access is known as a Management Information Base (MIB). Ethernet monitoring and management tools use standard SNMP to access configuration and management objects included in the device's MIB, providing that:

- objects that SNMP can access are defined and given unique names
- manager and agent programs agree on the names and meanings of fetch and store operations

Transparent Ready products support two SNMP network management levels:

- **Standard MIB II:** This first level of network management can be accessed via this interface. It lets the manager identify the devices that create the architecture and retrieve general information on the configuration and operation of the Ethernet TCP/IP interface.
- **MIB Transparent Ready interface:** Schneider has obtained a private MIB, *groupeschneider (3833)*, page 330. This MIB includes a set of data that enables the network management system to supervise the Ethernet services. The Transparent Ready private MIB can be downloaded from the Web server on any Transparent Ready module in a PLC.

SNMP Communication

Overview

SNMP defines network management solutions in terms of network protocols and the exchange of supervised data.

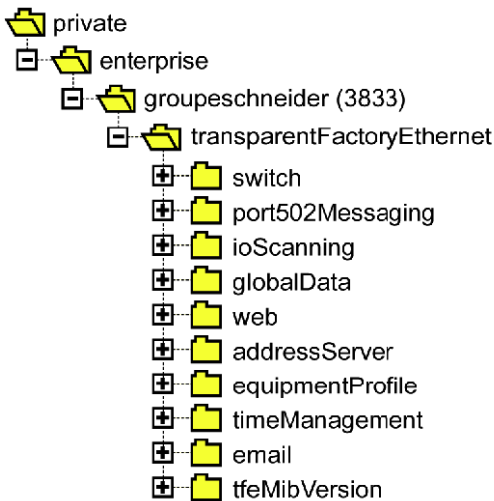
The SNMP structure relies on the following essential elements:

- **Manager:** The manager allows entire or partial network supervision.
- **Agents:** Each supervised device has one or more software modules named "Agent" that are used by the SNMP protocol.
- **MIB:** The Management Information Base is a database or collection of objects.

The SNMP agent is implemented on the Modicon M340 modules and on the Ethernet port of the controllers. This allows a manager to access MIB-II standardized objects from the Modicon M340 agent through the SNMP protocol. The MIB-II allows management of TCP/IP communication layers.

On the modules that support Ethernet communications, it is possible to access objects from the MIB Transparent Factory, which provides specific information about Global Data, I/O Scanning, and Messaging.

The following figure shows the tree structure of the TFE Ethernet MIB:



The source file of the TFE private MIB, page 330 is available on modules and CPUs that support Ethernet communications. The MIB can be uploaded from the module web page by selecting [Upload MIB File](#), page 259. This file may be compiled by the major SNMP managers on the market.

The SNMP Protocol

The SNMP protocol defines 5 types of messages between the agent and the manager. These messages are encapsulated in UDP datagrams.

Messages from the manager to an agent:

- `Get_Request`: message used to obtain the value of one or more variables
- `Get_Next_Request`: obtains the value of the next variables
- `Set_Request` : sets the value of a variable

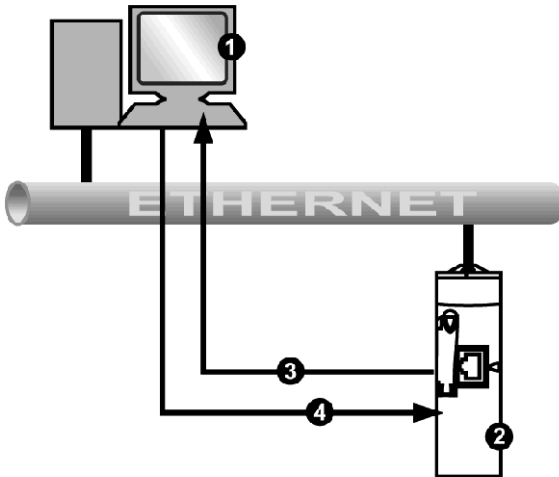
Messages from an agent to the manager:

- `Get_Response`: allows the agent to re-send the value of the requested variable.
- `Trap`: allows asynchronous event signaling by the agent.

SNMP Operations Example

Modicon M340 Example

The SNMP manager transmits read or write requests (`Set_Request`, `Get_Request`, `Get_Next_Request`, etc.) for objects defined in the MIB - II SNMP and the SNMP agent of the Modicon M340 module responds.



1 SNMP manager

2 SNMP agent (Modicon M340)

3 `Get_Response` trap

4 `Set_Request`, `Get_Request`, `Get_Next_Request`

The module's SNMP agent transmits events (traps) to the Manager. The managed traps systems are as follows:

- `Coldstart Trap`:
 - On the BMX NOE 01x0 modules and on the Ethernet port of the BMX P34 20x0 CPUs, the event is transmitted following a module supply Reset, a controller Reset, or the downloading of an application to the PLC.
- `Authentication Failure Trap`: event transmitted following an authentication problem. The **Community Name** field in the received message is different to the one configured on the module. This trap can be enabled during module configuration.

Global Data

Global Data

Introduction

Global Data, which is supported by the BMX NOE 01x0 modules, provides an automatic data exchange for the coordination of PLC applications.

NOTE: Global Data is not supported by the Ethernet port of BMX P34 20x0 CPUs.

Global Data

Key features of Global Data:

- Data exchanges are based on a standard producer/consumer protocol, giving optimal performance while maintaining a minimum network load.
- The Global Data service provides real-time exchanges between stations in the same distribution group, which share variables used for PLC coordination.
- Global Data can synchronize remote applications or share a common database among several distributed applications.
- A maximum of 64 stations can participate in Global Data within the same distribution group.

Operation

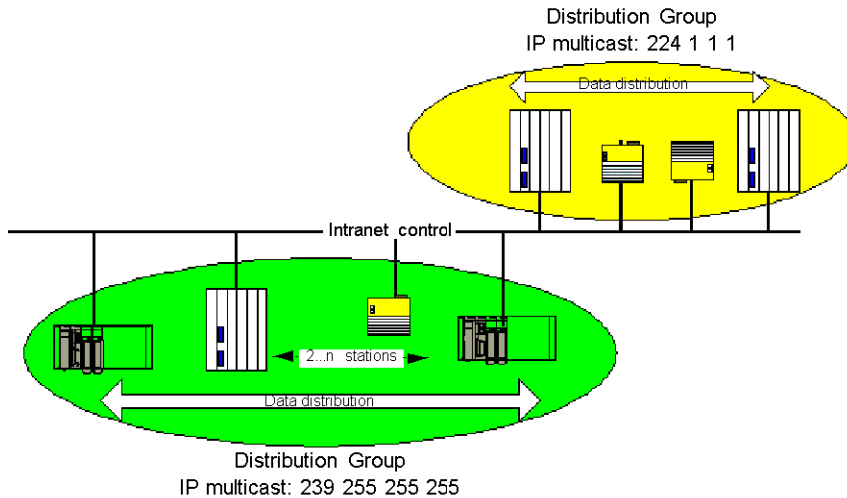
An application variable is a group of contiguous words from a PLC. Communication module stations can publish or subscribe to application variables:

- **publish:** Communication modules can publish one 1024-byte local application variable for other communication modules in the time-based distribution group. The publication period can be configured from 10 ms to 15000 ms (in 10 ms increments).
- **subscribe:** A communication module can subscribe to between 1 and 64 application variables that are published by other modules in their distribution group, regardless of their location. The validity for each variable is controlled by health status bits, linked to a refresh timeout configurable between 50 ms and 15 s (15000 ms). Access to a variable element is not possible. The maximum size of the subscribed variables is 4 Kbytes.

Through Global Data configuration you can define:

- the number of valid published and subscribed variables
- the group with which these variables are associated for the communications module

Once the module is configured, exchanges between the communication modules sharing the same Distribution Group are automatically carried out when the PLC is in RUN mode.



A distribution group is a group of communication modules identified by the same multicast IP address. Multicast exchanges, page 324 distribute Global Data. Several independent distribution groups can co-exist on the same subnetwork with different multicast addresses.

Important points:

- A publish/subscribe protocol on UDP/IP is used for data distribution.
- The content of the publication variable is synchronized during the out section of the MAST task.
- The content of the subscribed variables are copied to the PLC application memory during the in section of the MAST task.
- The PLC memory zones that receive the various subscription variables should not overlap. Do not use these variables for any other purpose.

Health Bits

A health bit (status bit) is associated with each application variable.

This bit indicates the validity of each subscription variable. It is 1 if the variable has been published and the subscriber has received it in the configured validity time. Otherwise, it is 0.

Multicast Filtering

Global Data uses multicast addressing. In accordance with the nature of broadcast messages, the multicast frames transmitted by a module are repeated on all switch ports, generating network congestion.

When the switches possess this function, multicast filtering allows multicast frame spreading to be limited to only the ports that require it.

The GMRP protocol establishes the list of ports involved in data traffic.

Operating Modes

The operating modes are as follows:

- Stopping the PLC stops Global Data exchanges.
- The use of the I/O forcing system bits (%S9, %SW8, %SW9) does not stop Global Data exchanges.

Limits

There are no theoretical limits for the number of stations that share a distribution group. There is a limit on the number of variables (64) that can be exchanged within the distribution group. For more information, refer to the table describing the parameters for the BMX NOE 01x0 modules, page 115 later in this user manual.

NOTE: Use less than 200 modules in any single distribution group.

Fast Device Replacement

About this Section

This section provides an overview of the Fast Device Replacement (FDR) service.

Replacing Devices

Introduction

This service provides automatic recovery of I/O module parameters or intelligent modules connected to a Transparent Factory Ethernet sub-segment. The recovery of this information is important during the replacement of a module with another module.

This service:

- supplies an IP address to a device from the name given to this station (device name)
- gives a remote station the capacity to store parameters and (when required) recover them

Operation

This service requires the use of the DHCP server, page 84 and the FTP/TFTP server of the BMX NOE 01x0 modules. It can manage up to 64 remote stations.

Operating principles:

- initially:
 - (1) The valid device obtains an IP address from the name that has been given to it (device name).
 - (2) The device gives its configuration parameters to the server.
- secondly: This station breaks down. It is replaced with a non-configured device of the same type, which has the same name as the station it replaces:
 - (1) It then transmits a DHCP request to the server.
 - (2) It receives its configuration file, which was saved first on the server.
 - (3) The device restarts automatically.

NOTE: The Device Name is limited to 16 ASCII characters.

NOTE: Schneider Electric supports FTP communication between BMX NOE 01x0 modules and the following tools:

- Schneider Electric firmware upgrade utilities
- Microsoft Windows command-line FTP client
- FTP clients in device Web pages
- FTP client access by approved devices that use the Schneider Electric FDR server service

Bandwidth Monitoring

About this Section

This section describes the bandwidth monitoring function of the BMX NOE 01x0 communication modules and the Ethernet channel of the BMX P34 20x0 CPUs.

Bandwidth monitoring tracks the module allocation for each of these services:

- messaging, page 97
- I/O scanning, page 76
- Global Data, page 91

With the workload data that it retrieves, the bandwidth monitoring service reports:

- the available resources for the module
- the current working capacity of the module

Bandwidth Monitoring

Introduction

Transparent Ready offers two types of services:

- real time: High-performance and predictable behavior are expected from services such as:
 - periodic services: I/O Scanner and Global Data
 - non-periodic services: Messaging on port 502 (Modbus)
- other: for Web and network management

After you configure the I/O Scanner, it is possible to estimate the load percentage of the module for this service.

The Bandwidth Monitoring function carries out this estimate during configuration.

The actual distribution of service loads is shown on the module's Control Expert diagnostics screen and on the diagnostics services bandwidth monitoring Web page.

Operation

In order to estimate this load, Control Expert asks you to supply two pieces of information during configuration:

- an estimate of the number of messaging transactions per second
- an estimate of the number of Global Data subscriptions received per second

Using this information, the software is able to display the load percentage of the module for:

- I/O Scanner, page 76
- Global Data, page 76
- messaging services, page 97
- remaining services, page 76

NOTE: During the configuration phase, these pieces of information are only estimates. The actual distribution is displayed in online mode.

Static and Dynamic Bandwidth Monitoring

Introduction

For the BMX NOE 01x0 and BMX P34 20x0 CPUs, the static bandwidth monitoring feature shows the approximate load as a percentage of the maximum available. Dynamic monitoring tracks certain counters to display the value of the load at the time of monitoring.

Static Bandwidth Monitoring

Configuration choices have an impact on the module load. The static bandwidth monitoring feature reports the approximate load as a percentage of the maximum available. For example, each I/O Scanner entry and subscription variable adds to the load, as do Modbus messaging function blocks. However, it is not possible to predict how often the Modbus messaging will run.

Estimating Traffic

To estimate network traffic, enter:

- the number of Global Data publications within the group (per second)
- the number of incoming Modbus/TCP requests from the network (per second)
- the number of outgoing Modbus/TCP requests per second (from the EFBs in the application)

Network Environment Choice

For the BMX P34 20x0 CPUs, choose among three network environments for network polling:

- **isolated:** lessens the impact of Ethernet communication on the scan by limiting the number of polled Ethernet messages to 700 per second

- **mastered**: increases the maximum number of polled messages to 1400 per second
- **open**: increases the maximum number of polled messages to 2100 per second

Be aware that an increase in the number of polled messages increases the load on the CPU module, which may be evident in a slower scan time.

Dynamic Bandwidth Monitoring

For the BMX NOE 01x0 and BMX P34 20x0 CPUs, the Bandwidth Monitoring service allows dynamic monitoring by tracking the total number of:

- packets processed per second
- *broadcast* packets processed per second
- *multicast* packets processed per second
- *unicast* packets processed per second
- *useless* packets (dropped by software) processed per second

As part of Ethernet Statistics, the service tracks the total number of dropped packets:

- total packets dropped by the hardware, due to buffer

Elsewhere in this guide is an illustration of the [bandwidth debugging window](#), page 209.

The Bandwidth Monitoring service tracks these counters to allow for dynamic monitoring:

Packets	Message Type	Comment
Total	All packets	
Broadcast	All ARP, etc.	
Multicast	All non-filtered multicast	Includes non-subscribed Global Data
Unicast	Modbus 502, FTP, HTTP, SNMP	
Useless	Software dropped	
Dropped	Lost	Dropped by hardware

TCP/IP Messaging

About this Section

This section describes the functions and characteristics of the TCP/IP profile.

NOTE: Elsewhere in this guide is reference material for the detailed technical characteristics of TCP/IP communication, page 309.

Data Exchange

Exchanges

Data exchanges take place in one of two modes:

- **server mode:** All Modbus-over-TCP requests from the PLC are supported by the Ethernet module.
- **client mode:** This type of exchange enables Modbus-over-TCP requests to be sent using the functions:
 - READ_VAR, page 314
 - WRITE_VAR, page 314
 - DATA_EXCH (see the *Communication Block Library* for Control Expert)

Transparent Device Access

About TDA

Transparent Device Access (TDA) functionality means that clients that run Control Expert (and that are connected to a USB, Ethernet, or Modbus terminal port of a communications module) can access or download applications to devices on distributed control networks. The reverse, however, is not true. In other words, a Control Expert PC connected to the CPU's Modbus port can access devices on other core networks, but those remote devices can not access other devices on different networks through the Modicon M340 station.

Scenarios

The following communication scenarios are possible:

- Ethernet port on the BMX P34 20x0x CPUs to the BMX NOE 01x0 Ethernet modules
- BMX NOE 01x0 Ethernet modules to the Ethernet port on the BMX P34 20x0x CPUs
- USB port on the BMX P34 20x0x CPUs to the Ethernet port on the BMX P34 20x0x CPUs
- USB port on the BMX P34 20x0x CPUs to the BMX NOE 01x0 Ethernet modules

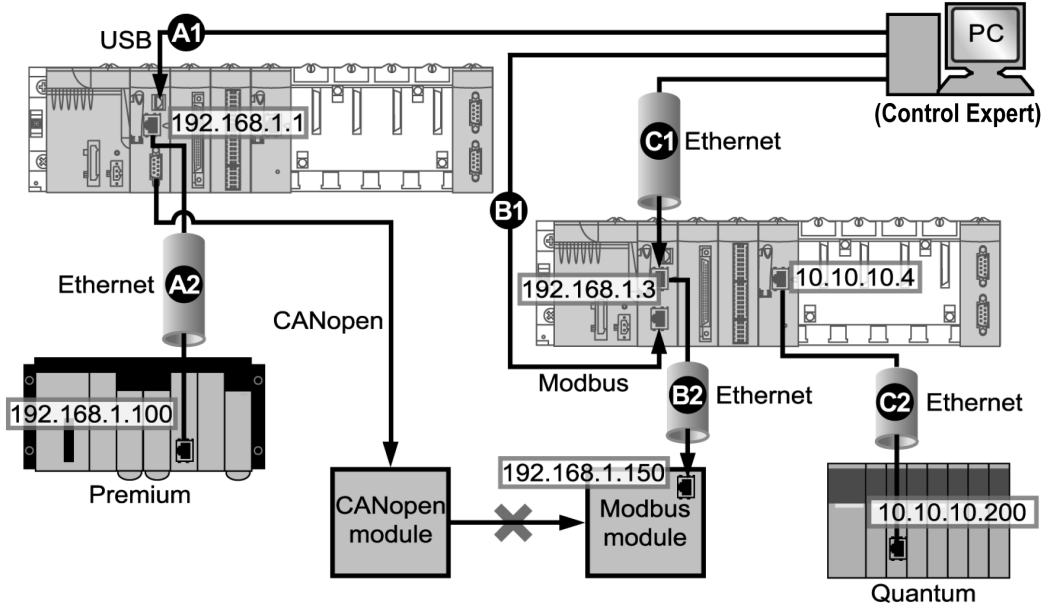
- Modbus port on the BMX P34 2020 CPU to the Ethernet port on the BMX P34 20x0x CPUs
- Modbus port on the BMX P34 2020 CPU to the BMX NOE 01x0 Ethernet modules

Examples

The following figure shows three different scenarios for downloading information from a PC running Control Expert to an end device:

- **scenario A:** TDA through the USB port of a BMX P34 2030 CPU
- **scenario B:** TDA through the Modbus port of a BMX P34 2020 CPU
- **scenario C:** TDA through the Ethernet port of a BMX NOE 01x0 module

This figure shows the ports (identified by IP address, where applicable):



Legend:

A1: Data is sent over USB source port on a BMX P34 2030 CPU in slot position 0 of a Modicon M340 station.

A2: The program is downloaded to an Ethernet module (192.168.1.100) in a Premium rack.

(For scenario A, the Control Expert address syntax is `SYS\CPU Ethernet port rack.slot.channel{destination IP address}`. Therefore, the address in the figure is `SYS\0.0.3{192.168.1.100}`.)

B1: Data is sent over Modbus source port on a BMX P34 2020 CPU (Modbus address: 2) at slot position 0 of a Modicon M340 station.

B2: The program is downloaded via Ethernet to a Modbus end device (**192.168.1.150**).

(For scenario B, the Control Expert address syntax is `CPU Modbus address\CPU Ethernet port rack.slot.channel{destination IP address}`. Therefore, the address in the figure is `2\0.0.3{192.168.1.150}`.)

C1: Data is sent over the Ethernet source port on a BMX P34 0100 CPU in slot position 0 of a Modicon M340 station.

C2: The BMX NOE 01•0 transmits over Ethernet to the Ethernet module (**10.10.10.200**) in a Quantum rack assembly in another network.

(For scenario C, the Control Expert address syntax is `source IP address\source port rack.slot.channel{destination IP address}`. Therefore, the address in the figure is `192.168.1.3\0.3.0{10.10.10.200}`.)

Time Synchronization Service

About this Section

This section describes the time synchronization service, which establishes an accurate local clock by referencing a network time protocol (NTP) server via the network transfer protocol (NTP).

Introducing the Time Synchronization Service

Overview

The time synchronization service establishes accuracy among computer clocks on an Ethernet system. For example, the time of one client may be synchronized either with another server, a referenced time source such as a radio or satellite receiver, or a GPS time server.

Typical time service configurations use redundant servers and diverse network paths to establish high accuracy and reliability. Time service accuracy can be within a millisecond on LANs and within tens of milliseconds on WANs.

Use the time synchronization service for:

- event recording (for example, tracking a sequence of events)
- event synchronization (for example, triggering simultaneous events)
- alarm and I/O synchronization (for example, time stamping alarms)

Features of the Service

The time synchronization service offers:

- periodic time corrections obtained from the reference standard, for example, the NTP server
- automatic switchover to a backup time server if a problem occurs with the normal server system
- local time zone configurable and customizable (including daylight saving time adjustments)

Controller projects use a function block to read the clock, a feature that allows events or variables in the project to be time stamped. Time stamping is accurate to:

- 5 ms typical
- 10 ms worst case

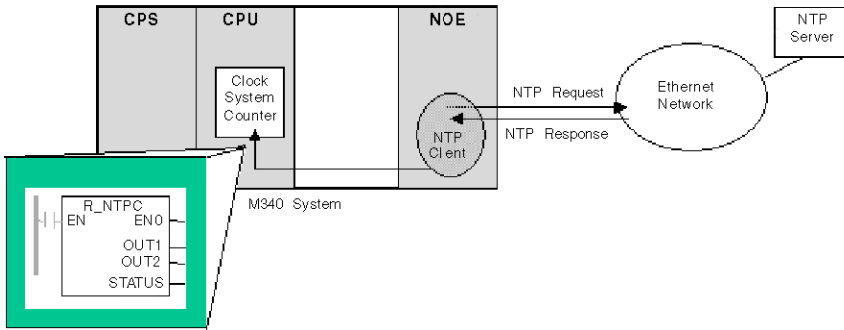
Time Synchronization and Time Stamps

The BMX NOE 01x0 Ethernet communications modules send a source time-synchronization signal to a CPU. The NOE's firmware includes an NTP client, which provides time synchronization. The synchronization process occurs as follows:

The NTP Client ...		Result
1	... requests a time synchronization signal from the NTP server over an Ethernet network.	The NTP server sends a signal.
2	... stores the time.	
3	... sends a message to the clock system counter in the CPU.	The CPU updates its internal clock. The CPU clock is now typically within 5 ms of the NTP server, with a worst case of 10 ms. Before the next time synchronization signal, the CPU clock is updated each ms by an internal timer.

Use the R_NTPC function block, page 104 in either MAST, FAST, or Interrupt sections to read the clock from the PLC application.

All the CPUs on an Ethernet network should be synchronized with the same NTP server.



Time Synchronization Terms

Term	Description of Service
local clock offset	<p>Accurate local time adjustments are made via a local clock offset. The local clock offset is calculated as:</p> $((T2 - T1) + (T3 - T4)) / 2$ <p>where:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • T1 = time when NTP request is transmitted from the module • T2 = time when NTP server receives the request (provided by the module in response) • T3 = time when the NTP server transmits the response (provided to the module in the response) • T4 = time when NTP response is received by the module
time accuracy	<p>The local time error is < 10 ms compared to the referenced NTP server time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • typical: 5 ms • worst case: <10 ms
settling time	<p>Maximum accuracy is obtained after 2 updates from the NTP server.</p>
polling period dependency	<p>Accuracy depends on the polling period. To obtain the best possible accuracy (when your network bandwidth allows), reduce the polling period to a small value - e.g., a polling time of 5 s provides better accuracy than a time of 30 s.</p>
time zone	<p>The default format is universal time, coordinated (UTC). Optionally you may configure the service to use a local time zone - e.g., GMT+1 for Barcelona or Paris</p>
daylight saving time	<p>The module automatically adjusts the time change in the spring and fall.</p>
leap second	<p>To compensate for the deceleration of the earth rotation, the module automatically inserts a leap second in the UTC time every 18 months via an international earth rotation service (IERS).</p> <p>Leap seconds are inserted automatically as needed. When needed, they are inserted at the end of the last minute in June or December, as commanded by the NTP server.</p>

Using the Time Synchronization Service

Establishing Accuracy at Power Up

Before starting a system, configure the Ethernet network for a predefined interval, within which the accuracy is established. Accuracy is established at power-up, when the Ethernet module boots and then obtains the time from the NTP server.

Several updates may be required to achieve peak accuracy. Once an accurate time is obtained, the time synchronization service sets the `STATUS`, page 104 in the associated time service register.

Obtaining and Maintaining Accuracy

The time service clock starts at 0 and increments until the Ethernet network time is fully updated from the module.

Model	Starting Date
M340 with Control Expert	January 1, 1980 00:00:00.00

Clock characteristics:

- Clock accuracy is not affected by issuing stop/run commands on the PLC
- Clock updates are not affected by issuing stop/run commands on the PLC
- Mode transitions do not affect the accuracy of the Ethernet network

Reinitializing the Time Service Register

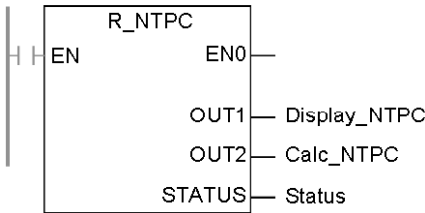
After a download or an NTP server swap, the status clock value associated with the time service register in the CPU is reinitialized.

Two polling periods elapse before an accurate time is reestablished.

Using the R_NTPC Block for Time Synchronization

R_NTPC Representation

The block reads the Ethernet network system time and transfers it into specified parameters. The additional parameter EN should be configured.



R_NTPC block has a 16-bit status word.

R_NTPC Parameter Description

Description of parameters:

Parameter	Data Type	Description		
Display_NTPC (OUT1)	DT + INT	NTP clock value displayed in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> year, month, day, hours, minutes, and seconds using the DT format milliseconds as an INT 		
Calc_NTPC (OUT2)	UDINT+INT	NTP clock value displayed in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> seconds as an UDINT fractions of a second as an INT 		
Status	INT	Low Byte	High Byte	Description
		0	0	un-initialized state
		1	0	illegal
		0	1	The CPU is out of synchronization with the NTP server, but the clock has been updated at least once by an external server.
		1	1	normal operation

Parameter	Data Type	Description
		<p>The low byte is managed by the controller</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set = 0 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ The clock value is NOT available. ◦ The date/time is NOT updated within last two minutes. • Set = 1 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ The date/time is updated within the last two minutes. ◦ The date/time is acceptable. <p>The high byte is managed by the NOE.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set = 0 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ The NTP server clock value is not available. • Set = 1 <p>The updated date/time is received from server and sent to the module (at least once).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ within two-minute time interval ◦ acceptable (10 ms or less error)
		For a valid time in the CPU, the low and high bytes of the STATUS parameter must be set to 1.

Electronic Mail Notification Service

About this Section

This section describes the electronic mail notification service, which uses SMTP to send e-mail messages.

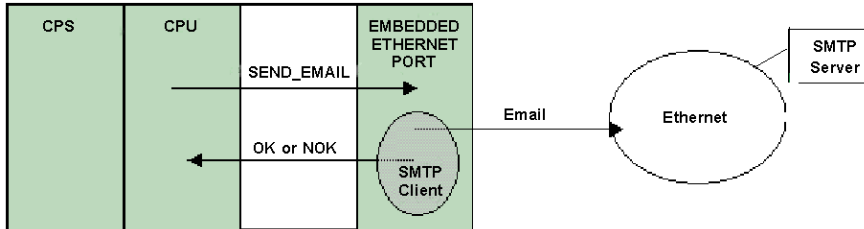
Introducing the Electronic Mail Notification Service

Introduction

The electronic mail notification service allows controller-based projects to report alarms or events. The controller monitors the system and dynamically creates an electronic mail message to alert local or remote users.

Mail Service Client

The BMX P34 20x0 controller include an SMTP client. When the module receives a specific request from the project, the module sends an email message to the mail server on the network.



Mail System Types

SMTP provides two mechanisms for the transmission of email messages—direct connection and a relay system:

Mechanism	Condition	Result
Direct connection	Sender and receiver are connected to the same transport service.	Email messages are sent to host.
Relay system	Sender and receiver are connected to different transport services.	Email messages are relayed from one server to another. The SMTP server must be supplied with the address of both the destination host and the destination mailbox.

Operating Modes and Sending Requests

Because the application program sends the email request, a controller cannot send an email message either while in the stopped mode or while downloading a project. As soon as the controller is in run mode, the function block sends a request during the first project scan.

Diagnostic counters are reset to 0 after either a power-up, a project download, or a reconfiguration of the electronic mail notification service.

Using the Electronic Mail Notification Service

Configuring the Service

An authorized administrator may use the SMTP configuration screen to:

- configure the electronic mail notification service
- set the IP address of the mail server

NOTE: The default TCP port number for SMTP is 25. Ensure that you configure the port specified by your local mail server.

Message Creation and Delivery

A user-defined event or condition triggers the SEND_EMAIL block to create a message. Each message uses one of three user-defined headers. Each message sent from the controller can contain text and variable information (up to a maximum of 1 022 bytes).

The project selects the appropriate header. Each header contains:

- sender name
- list of recipients
- subject

Header Examples

An authorized administrator can define and update the text and variable information via the SMTP configuration screen. You should define mail headers to indicate different levels of importance. For example:

- header 1 could be *Urgent problem reported by PLC 10*
- header 2 could be *Notification from substation 10*
- header 3 could be *Info message from water system*

Listing different recipients in each of the three headers helps assure that information flows quickly to the right recipients. The project adds pertinent information such as the specific device, process, or location. This information is added to the body of the mail message. Then the complete message is sent to an electronic mail server for distribution to recipients.

Recipients may be engineers, managers, or process owners.

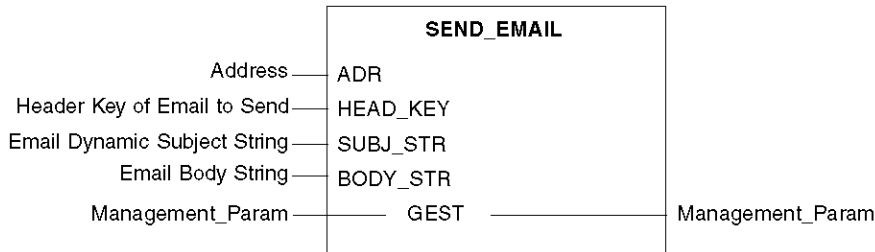
Security (Authentication)

An optional login (system ID) and password can be used to authenticate the connection to the SMTP mail server. The SMTP-supported authentication method is LOGIN.

Using the SEND_EMAIL Block for Electronic Mail Notification

SEND_EMAIL Representation

To send an email message from the application (configured through the SMTP Control Expert screen, page 189), use a SEND_EMAIL function block. The addressing to use to send a message to the email service is: *rack, slot, channel=3*. The address entry of the SEND_EMAIL function block requires the NetLink where the email should go out from. The sendBuffer takes the user payload (ASCII text string). A dedicated email errCode output is defined.



Parameter Description

The following table describes the input parameters:

Parameters	Data Type	Description
ADR	ARRAY [0...7] OF INT	Use the ADDM function block to build this field. Note that this email service is limited to the embedded Ethernet port on the CPU. If the application sends an email to an NOE module, you will get a destination address incorrect , page 110 error code.
HEAD_KEY	INT	Corresponds to the email's addresses handled with Control Expert software (only 1, 2, and 3 are accepted).

Parameters	Data Type	Description
SUBJ_STR	STRING	Represents the dynamic part of the email subject that is appended to the static subject string.
BODY_STR	STRING	Represents the body of the email.

The following table describes the input/output parameters:

Parameters	Data Type	Description
Management_Param	ARRAY [0...3] OF INT	Exchange management table consisting of four words (activity, report, timeout, length) used to control parameters of the execution. The length parameter (4th word of the management table) is an output parameter. This word is written by the system with the total length of the email (dynamic subject + body). The maximum size of the dynamic subject + body is 1 024 characters. If the size of the dynamic subject + body exceeds 1 024 characters, an incorrect send length , page 110 error code is generated.

SEND_EMAIL Rules

After the launch of a SEND_EMAIL function block, the activity bit is set until the email is sent. There is no confirmation that the email has arrived to the destination address. If a timeout is programmed (third management word $\neq 0$), the email is cancelled if it has not been sent within this time. In this case, the second management word receives an **exchange stop on timeout (0x01)**, page 110 error code.

You may send four simultaneous emails, using four function blocks. A fifth function block trying to send an email will receive a **no controller system resources (0x0B)**, page 110 error code until one of the resources is free.

SEND_EMAIL Example

```

IF (default_id = 0) THEN
  (* PUMP IS OK *)
  SEND_EMAIL(ADDM('0.0.3'),1,'Pump n°3 is OK', '', Mng_send_email);
ELSE
  (* PUMP IS FAULTY *)
  str_default      := INT_TO_STRING(default_id);
  str_email_body := CONCAT_STR(' Default = ', str_default);
  SEND_EMAIL(ADDM('0.0.3'),1,'Pump n°3 is faulty', str_email_body,
            Mng_send_email);
END_IF;

```

SEND_EMAIL EF Local Error Codes

Error Code (hex)	Description
16#00	No error
16#01	Time out
16#02	User cancelled
16#03	Incorrect address format
16#04	Destination address incorrect
16#06	Com Fb parameters incorrect (e.g., HEAD_KEY parameter not equal to 1, 2, or 3)
16#07	Generic transmission problem
16#09	Receive buffer too small
16#0B	No system resources: the number of simultaneous communication EFs exceeds the maximum that can be managed by the controller
16#0E	Incorrect send length

NOTE: The SEND_EMAIL EF local error codes provide more information than the Ethernet channel diagnostic information (in the Control Expert Debug screen). For example, when the message body is greater than allowed, the email is truncated and sent. Whereas, with the Ethernet diagnostic, there is no error, while the EF displays the code 16#0E.

Electronic Mail Notification Service Error Codes

Error Codes

The following codes are available only on the diagnostic screen for the electronic mail notification service:

Error Code (hex)	Description
5100	Internal error detected
5101	SMTP component not operational
5102	Mail header not configured
5104	Cannot connect to SMTP server
5105	Error detected during transmitting content of email body to SMTP server

Error Code (hex)	Description
5106	Closing SMTP connection with the server returned an error message
5107	SMTP HELO request unsuccessful
5108	SMTP MAIL request unsuccessful — SMTP server may require authentication
5109	SMTP RCPT request unsuccessful
510A	No recipient accepted by the SMTP server
510B	SMTP DATA request unsuccessful
510C	Send email request contains an invalid length
510D	Authentication unsuccessful
510E	A reset component request was received while the connection was open

Modicon M340 Module Descriptions and Specifications

What's in This Part

The BMX NOE 01x0 Communication Module	113
The BMX P34 2020 and BMX P34 2030 CPUs.....	119

About this Part

This part describes physical characteristics and technical specifications for the Modicon M340 modules that support Ethernet communications:

- BMX NOE 0100 module
- BMX NOE 0110 module
- BMX P34 2020 CPU
- BMX P34 2030 CPU

NOTE: Elsewhere in this book is a guide for selecting the appropriate hardware for your system and application requirements, page 40. For Modicon M340 system installation and specifications, see the book *Modicon X80 Racks and Power Supplies, Hardware, Reference Manual*.

The BMX NOE 01x0 Communication Module

What's in This Chapter

BMX NOE 01x0 Ethernet Services	113
BMX NOE 01x0 Environmental and Electrical Characteristics.....	117
Standards and Certifications.....	118

About this Chapter

The BMX NOE 01x0 is the network option module for communications on Ethernet systems with Modicon M340 range I/O rack-based modular platforms.

BMX NOE 01x0 Ethernet Services

Introduction

Described below are the Ethernet services that are available for the BMX NOE 01x0 modules.

NOTE: Elsewhere in this guide are more detailed descriptions of the individual services, page 76.

Security

You can enhance security for your project by disabling the FTP/TFTP and HTTP services at times when you do not need to use them. The module uses the HTTP service to provide access to the embedded Web pages. The module uses the FTP and TFTP services to support various features including firmware upgrades, FDR services, and Ethernet remote IO.

Modbus TCP Messaging

This service allows the exchange of data between devices supporting Modbus over TCP/IP.

Maximum Capacity

The maximum Ethernet frame size depends on the type of transaction. The maximum frame size is 256 bytes for messaging.

The BMX NOE 01x0 modules are used to:

- manage these TCP connections using port 502 messaging:
 - servers (32 connections)
 - clients (16 connections)
 - Transparent Device Access (2 connections)
- scan up to a maximum of 64 devices using the I/O scanner
- serve as the address server for a maximum of 64 devices

I/O Scanning

The module can scan up to 64 Modbus TCP devices. It can send:

- Modbus read (FC03) requests (a maximum of 125 registers)
- Modbus write (FC16) requests (a maximum of 100 registers)
- Modbus read/write (FC23) requests (a maximum of 125 read registers and 100 write registers)

There are 2 048 available registers each for storing read and write data.

The following table indicates I/O Scanner performance limits:

Parameter	Value Range for Option Module
Number of I/O devices	0 ... 64
Modbus function code available	FC3, FC16, FC23
Size of the Read	0 ... 125 words for each device
Size of the Write	0 ... 100 words for each device
Total size of the Read	2 K words
Total size of the Write	2 K words
Repetitive rate	0 ... 60,000 msec
Application storage area	contiguous %IW, %MW
Health status	1 bit for each variable in the IODDT

DHCP

The DHCP server service writes to the card during operation, so a write-protected card prevents the service from starting.

NOTICE

INOPERABLE EQUIPMENT

Do not use a write-protected memory card with the module.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

DHCP (dynamic host configuration protocol) is a TCP/IP protocol that allows a server to assign an IP address with a device name that corresponds to a network node. The DHCP server supplies other parameters to clients on the network.

SNMP

SNMP (simple network management protocol) is a UDP/IP standard protocol used to monitor and manage nodes on an IP network. The SNMP agent supports both the MIB II and the Transparent Ready Private MIB, page 330.

Global Data

Global data provides the automatic exchange of data variables for the coordination of PLC applications. The BMX NOE 01x0 modules support Global Data.

The table describes the parameters for the BMX NOE 01x0 modules in the Transparent Ready service:

Parameter	Value Range for Option Module
Number of variables in the distribution group	0 ... 64 variables
Number of publications per device	0 ... 1 variable
Size of published variables	Up to 512 words each, total size of 512 words per module
Publication rate	10 ms ... 15000 ms (in 10 ms increments)
Number of subscriptions per device	0 ... 64 variables
Size of subscribed variables	Up to 512 words each, mapped to several non-contiguous application areas, total size of 2048 words

Parameter	Value Range for Option Module
Application storage area	non-contiguous %IW, %MW and unlocated
Health status	1 bit for each variable in the IODDT

Every Ethernet port can manage only one distribution group, identified with an IP multicast address. The range of IP multicast addresses for global data is between 224.0.0.0 and 239.255.255.255.

Device Management

The FDR (fast device replacement) service on the BMX NOE 01x0 offers a method of handling device replacement without disrupting the system nor interrupting service. The FDR server parameter files are stored on a [memory card](#), page 49. The FDR server uses the device path to initialize the rest of the FDR system on bootup, as shown in the table below.

Parameters	BMX NOE 01x0
Number of I/O devices	64
memory size (max)	256K bytes

NOTE: Memory card considerations:

- The FDR server does not run on a write-protected memory card.
- FDR server operations require 256 Kbytes of available space on the memory card.

Bandwidth Monitoring

The bandwidth monitoring service indicates how a communication module's CPU is shared between services (such as global data, I/O scanner, messaging, etc.).

NTP

The NOE firmware includes an NTP client, which provides time synchronization. The time synchronization service establishes accuracy among computer clocks on an Ethernet system. For example, the time of one client may be synchronized either with another server, a referenced time source such as a radio or satellite receiver, or a GPS time server.

Use the time synchronization service for:

- event recording (for example, tracking a sequence of events)
- event synchronization (for example, triggering simultaneous events)
- alarm and I/O synchronization (for example, time stamping alarms)

BMX NOE 01x0 Environmental and Electrical Characteristics

Ruggedized Version

The BMX NOE 0100H and BMX NOE 0110H (hardened) equipment are the ruggedized versions of the respective BMX NOE 0100 and BMX NOE 0110 (standard) equipment. They can be used at extended temperatures and in harsh chemical environments.

For more information, refer to chapter *Installation in More Severe Environments*.

Altitude Operating Conditions

The characteristics apply to the modules BMX NOE 01x0 and BMX NOE 01x0H for use at altitude up to 2000 m (6560 ft). When the modules operate above 2000 m (6560 ft), apply additional derating.

For detailed information, refer to chapter *Operating and Storage Conditions*.

Operating Temperature

Module reference	Temperature range
BMX NOE 01x0	0...+60 °C (32...+140 °F)
BMX NOE 01x0H	-25...+70 °C (-13...+158 °F)

NOTE: At the temperature extremes (-25... 0 °C and 60... 70 °C) (-13...32 °F and 140...158 °F), the BMX NOE 01x0H operating characteristics are the same as the BMX NOE 01x0 characteristics within its (0...60 °C) (32...140 °F) temperature range.

Consumed Current

The BMX NOE 01x0 modules can be inserted into any rack slot on the station assembly, page 37.

The table shows the current that the BMX NOE 01x0 and the BMX NOE 01x0H, page 118 consume from the 24 VDC rack power and the residual dissipated power:

	Ethernet Modules
	BMX NOE 01x0 and BMX NOE01x0H
Consumed Current	90 mA
Dissipated Power	2.2 W

Standards and Certifications

Download

Click the link that corresponds to your preferred language to download standards and certifications (PDF format) that apply to the modules in this product line:

Title	Languages
Modicon M580, M340, and X80 I/O Platforms, Standards and Certifications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • English: EIO0000002726 • French: EIO0000002727 • German: EIO0000002728 • Italian: EIO0000002730 • Spanish: EIO0000002729 • Chinese: EIO0000002731

The BMX P34 2020 and BMX P34 2030 CPUs

What's in This Chapter

BMX P34 20x0 Ethernet Services	119
BMX P34 20x0x Environmental and Electrical Characteristics.....	121

About this Chapter

This chapter describes the physical characteristics of the embedded Ethernet ports on the BMX P34 2020 and BMX P34 2030 CPUs.

BMX P34 20x0 Ethernet Services

Introduction

Described below are the Ethernet services that are available for the BMX P34 20x0 CPUs.

NOTE: Elsewhere in this guide are more detailed descriptions of the individual services, page 76.

Security

You can enhance security for your project by disabling the FTP/TFTP and HTTP services at times when you do not need to use them. The CPU uses the HTTP service to provide access to the embedded Web pages. The CPU uses the FTP and TFTP services to support various features including firmware upgrades, FDR services, and Ethernet remote IO.

Modbus TCP Messaging

The Modbus TCP messaging service allows the exchange of data between devices supporting Modbus over TCP/IP.

Maximum Capacity

The maximum frame size depends on the type of transaction:

- For messaging, the maximum frame size is 256 bytes.

The BMX P34 20x0 CPUs allow you to:

- manage these TCP connections using port 502 messaging:
 - servers (32 connections)
 - clients (16 connections)
 - Transparent Device Access (2 connections)

NOTE: Elsewhere in this guide is detailed information for opening and closing connections, page 309.

SNMP

SNMP (simple network management protocol) is a UDP/IP standard protocol used to monitor and manage nodes on an IP network. The SNMP agent supports both the MIB II and the Transparent Ready Private MIB, page 330.

FDR Client

In the event of a device malfunction, the Fast Device Replacement service, page 94 automatically reconfigures the replacement CPU in accordance with its device name. The new device retrieves its IP addresses, network parameters, and FDR file path from a DHCP server.

Embedded Web Pages

The BMX P34 20x0 CPUs support the diagnostics Web pages that you can access through the Modicon M340 Diagnostics screen.

Bandwidth Monitoring

The Bandwidth Monitoring service, page 95 indicates how a communication module's CPU is shared between services (such as global data, I/O scanner, messaging, etc.).

SMTP

The BMX P34 20x0 controller includes an SMTP client, which is an electronic mail notification service that allows controller-based projects to report alarms or events. The controller monitors the system and dynamically creates an electronic mail message to alert local or remote users. The PLC sends the mail message to a mail server on the network for distribution.

BMX P34 20x0x Environmental and Electrical Characteristics

Ruggedized Version

The BMX P34 2020H and BMX P34 20302H (hardened) equipments are the ruggedized versions of the respective BMX P34 2020 and BMX P34 20302 (standard) equipments. They can be used at extended temperatures and in harsh chemical environments.

For more information, refer to chapter *Installation in More Severe Environments* (see *Modicon M580, M340, and X80 I/O Platforms, Standards and Certifications*).

Altitude Operating Conditions

The characteristics apply to the modules for use at altitude up to 2000 m (6560 ft). When the modules operate above 2000 m (6560 ft), apply additional derating.

For detailed information, refer to chapter *Operating and Storage Conditions*.

Operating Temperature

Module reference	Temperature range
BMX P34 2020 and BMX P34 2030/20302	0...+60 °C (32...+140 °F)
BMX P34 2020H and BMX P34 20302H	-25...+70 °C (-13...+158 °F)

Consumed Current

The BMX P34 20x0x CPUs are inserted into in the rack assembly, page 37.

The table shows the current that the BMX P34 20x0x CPUs consume from the 24 VDC rack power and the residual dissipated power:

	Embedded Ethernet Port	
	BMX P34 2020	BMX P34 2030/20302
Consumed Current	95 mA	135 mA
Dissipated Power	2.3 W	3.2 W

These values do not include the consumption of devices connected on the communication port 5 V supply.

Ethernet Configuration with Control Expert

What's in This Part

Software Configuration Parameters.....	124
Configuring an Ethernet Network.....	197
Debugging with Control Expert.....	203
Ethernet Language Objects	212
M340 Ethernet Communications Quick Start.....	231

About this Part

This part describes the Control Expert configuration of the BMX NOE 01x0 communication modules and BMX P34 20x0 CPUs.

Software Configuration Parameters

What's in This Chapter

The Configuration Screen	124
Security	136
IP Configuration Parameters	138
Messaging Configuration Parameters	141
I/O Scanner Configuration Parameters	144
Global Data Configuration Parameters	175
SNMP Configuration Parameters	180
Address Server Configuration Parameters	185
Bandwidth Checking	186
Electronic Mail Notification Service Configuration Parameters	189
Time Synchronization Service Configuration Parameters	191

About this Chapter

This chapter introduces the configuration parameters for the different facilities used by the BMX NOE 01x0 modules and the BMX P34 20x0 CPUs.

The Configuration Screen

Configuration of Modicon M340 Controllers

Access the Configuration Screen

In the **Project Browser**, right-click the **Configuration** folder and click **Open**.

Memory Management

The configuration screen differs depending on the type of memory management to be used.

The option you select here must comply with the type of memory management you select for the input and output modules.

These settings are possible:

- When **Topological** memory management is configured for the controller, you can select only **Topological** memory management for the discrete and analog modules.
- When **Mixed topological and State RAM** memory management is configured for the controller, you can select either **Topological** or **Mixed topological and State RAM** memory management for the discrete and analog modules.

The memory management settings of the controller are compared with the memory management settings of the modules during **Analyze**. If any inconsistencies are detected, an appropriate message is displayed in the output window.

The type of memory management you selected for the controller is used as default setting for the **Memory Management** parameter in the **Memory** tab for input / output configuration.

To import a legacy LL984 Compact application that uses Modbus requests to communicate with an HMI device, use State RAM addressing to preserve the Modbus exchange between the controller and the HMI.

NOTE: If you use the fallback configuration in your hardware configuration, take care that the fallback values can only be applied if the **Topological** option is selected.

Configuration of the Controller

Configure the management of topological memory on the **Configuration** tab for the controller module, page 124.

Modify the options on this tab only in offline mode.

These options are available in the **Operating mode** group box on the **Configuration** tab:

Option	Description
Run/Stop input	Select this option to enable the Run/Stop input option, page 128. NOTE: Do not enable this option if the associated discrete input is mapped in state RAM. That action inhibits the controller start-up.
Memory protect	Select this option to enable the Memory protect option. NOTE: The protection is activated by an input bit. The protection level depends on the firmware versions, see detailed information, page 128.
Automatic start in Run	Select this option to enable the Automatic start in Run option, page 128.
Initialize %MWi on cold start	Select this option to write the initial values to %MWi (%MWi, page 129) on a cold start triggered by software (application download, initialize command, restore command, %S0 activation, cold start button on the controller screen). If you deselect (uncheck) this option, the value is set to 0. NOTE: For more information on cold starts, refer to the EcoStruxure™ Control Expert, Program Languages and Structure, Reference Manual.
Cold Start Only	Select this option to enable the Cold Start Only option, page 130.

Option	Description
Protected Engineering Link	Select this option to enable the Protected Engineering Link option, page 129. NOTE: The Protected Engineering Link option is present only if the selected controller supports it.
Default values	Click this button to implement the default values for the options in the Operating mode group box.

These options are available in the **Memory Management** group box on the **Configuration** tab:

Option	Description
Topological	Select this option to use topological addressing for memory management. NOTE: Refer to the instructions for topological addressing, page 126.
Mixed Topological and State RAM	Select this option to use a mixture of topological and defined state RAM addressing for memory management. NOTE: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The state RAM address starts at address 0, but the first available address for discrete and analog modules is %I1, %M1, %IW1, and %MW1. Refer to the instructions for mixed topological and state RAM addressing, page 127.
Size of global address fields	Configure the size of the individual global address fields.
Maximum values	Click this button to implement the maximum available values for the options in the Memory Management group box.

Topological Addressing

Configure the topological address:

Step	Action
1	In the Size of global address fields of the dialog box, define the number of internal bits %M for the application, refer to the EcoStruxure™ Control Expert, Program Languages and Structure, Reference Manual.
2	Define the number of internal words %MW.
3	Define the number of constants %KW.

The system bits and system words are fixed by the manufacturer.

Modicon M340 applications of version 06.00 and earlier are automatically configured with this address configuration for topological addressing.

Mixed Topological and State RAM Addressing

For Modicon 02.40 and any subsequent supporting version(s), the following additional options are available in the configuration screen for mixed topological and state RAM addressing:

Option	Value	Description
Mem usage	The value depends on the memory usage of the Modicon M340 configuration.	A bar graph displays the percentage of the memory already in use.
%M-0x	Enter the appropriate values. The values depend on the configuration.	Size of the different memory areas. NOTE: The values for %IW and %MW have to be divisible by 8.
%MW-4x		
%I-1x		
%IW-3x		
Viewer	–	Opens the <i>State RAM Viewer</i> tab, page 131 which displays the allocation of used memory.

NOTE:

- The state RAM address starts at address 0, but the first available address for discrete and analog modules is %I1, %M1, %IW1, and %MW1.
- State RAM addresses are not verified during input. If any range overlapping is detected or any address exceeds the range of the state RAM, an appropriate message is displayed at the validation screen or during **Analyze**.
- With this type of memory management, all channels are associated to one task (MAST or FAST).

Pre-set Values

To select the:

- **default** values, press the **Default values** button,
- **maximum** values, press the **Maximum values** button,

Use of the command buttons:

Button	Role
Unselect All	Clear the selected default values posted on the right of the check boxes.
Select All	Select all default values posted on the right of the check boxes.
Cancel	Exit.
OK	Exit and take the values into account.

NOTE: With the **Maximum values** button, the window displayed is the same, only the values on the right of the check boxes are different.

RUN/STOP Input

The **%I_{r.m.c}** input can be set to switch the controller to **RUN/STOP** mode:

- **%I_{r.m.c}** to 1 -> the controller switches to RUN (execution of the program),
- **%I_{r.m.c}** to 0 -> the controller switches to STOP mode (stop program execution).

NOTE: A STOP command always takes priority over a RUN command. A STOP command sent from EcoStruxure Control Expert or through the network has priority over the **%I_{r.m.c}** input.

An error on the RUN/STOP input causes a switch to STOP.

Do not enable this option if the associated discrete input is mapped in state RAM because this inhibits the start-up of the controller.

Memory Protect

The **%I_{r.m.c}** input can be set to help protect the internal application ram and the memory card:

- **%I_{r.m.c}** to 0 -> the internal application and the memory card are not protected,
- **%I_{r.m.c}** to 1 -> the internal application and the memory card are protected.

For firmware versions < 02.60, the **Memory Protect** function prohibits the transfer of a project into the controller and modifications in online mode, but RUN/STOP commands are available.

For firmware version 02.60 and any subsequent supporting version(s), the **Memory Protect** function prohibits the transfer of a project into the controller and modifications in online mode: you cannot connect to the controller and the RUN/STOP commands are not available.

NOTE: If the input is in error (Input Module not physically plugged, incorrect wiring, input not powered...), **%I_{r.m.c}** is considered at 1. To remove this protection in this configuration screen, the input should not be in error.

Automatic Start in Run

Enabling this option automatically changes the controller to RUN mode at the time of a cold start. (Refer to the EcoStruxure™ Control Expert, Program Languages and Structure, Reference Manual.).

Initializing %MWi

On a cold start or on download if you select the checkbox (default state):

the %MWi are handled like other global variables (initialized to 0 or initial value, according to current application) in all cold start cases,

On a cold start or on download, if you deselect the checkbox:

- if %MW were previously saved in internal flash memory (using the %SW96 word) they are restored from internal flash memory.
- %MW were not previously saved in internal flash memory:
 - if the cold start is linked to a power-off or of a push on the reset button, the %MW are initialized.
 - if the cold start is not linked to a power-off or of a push on the reset button, the current values of %MW are maintained.

NOTE: If the new (or restored) application has more %MW than the previous one, the added %MW are set to 0 (non-zero initial values are not applied).

For more information on cold start, refer to EcoStruxure™ Control Expert, Program Languages and Structure, Reference Manual.

Protected Engineering Link

The **Protected Engineering Link** option is enabled by default in EcoStruxure Control Expert 16.0 with Modicon M340 application version 03.60 (and subsequent supporting versions).

Use the **Protected Engineering Link** option to help secure the authentication for Modicon M340 controller modules:

Step	Action
1	Select a Modicon M340 03.60 application version or any subsequent supporting version in the Hardware catalog.
2	Open the Configuration tab for the controller module, page 124.
3	Verify that the Protected Engineering Link option is selected.
4	Set the application password in the Project & Controller Protection tab in the Properties of Project dialog box.

Step	Action
5	Verify that you implement these versions in your system: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Modicon M340 controller module firmware version 03.60 or any subsequent supporting version (s). • Modicon M340 application version 03.60 or any subsequent supporting version(s). • EcoStruxure Control Expert 16.0 or any subsequent supporting version(s).
6	Download the configuration and applications to establish secure authentication for the Modicon M340 controller module.

The **Protected Engineering Link** option is available and enabled by default in EcoStruxure Control Expert 16.0 with Modicon M340 application version 03.60 (and subsequent supporting versions).

In this case, the initial connection time between EcoStruxure Control Expert and the controller may take longer than usual due to the time it takes to establish the cybersecurity inspection mechanism.

Cold Start Only

The **Cold Start Only** option is supported by controllers with operating system version V02.10 or any subsequent supporting version(s).

If selected, this option forces the cold start of the application, instead of the normal warm start.

By default, the **Cold Start Only** option is disabled.

An application using this functionality is not:

- downloadable on a controller with a previous version,
- executable on a controller with a previous version,
- usable with Unity Pro 4.0 or earlier.

NOTE: Unity Pro is the former name of EcoStruxure Control Expert Classic for version 13.1 or earlier.

Memory Management

This area of the dialog box allows you to define the type of addressing (topological or mixed addressing).

For mixed addressing it contains a bar graph indicating the size of the **State RAM** memory used in your project in relation to the maximum memory size and a **Viewer** button opening the state RAM memory viewer.

State RAM Memory Viewer

The state RAM viewer is directly accessible through the **PLC** menu (**PLCState Ram Viewer**).

Description of the screen zones:

Zone	Description
Table	<p>This table represents the mapping of the memory area selected with the Memory Area selection buttons.</p> <p>The occupied memory addresses are marked by dashes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • blue: for module type objects • red: for objects entered in the program • green: for objects defined in the variable editor <p>The scroll bars can be used to access the entire memory area.</p>
Modules, Language, Variables	<p>These check boxes are used to filter the information displayed in the table. If, for example, Modules is the only check box that is selected, only module-type information is displayed.</p>
Address information	<p>Enter the object and its address in the Address fields and click the Go To button to directly display the address in the table (without using the scroll bars). This zone also has a display function; it displays the object and address of the box selected in the table. For module-type objects, it also gives the topological address of the module concerned.</p>
Memory Area	<p>Use these radial buttons to select the memory area to display in the table:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • %M (0x) (output bits and internal bits) • %I (1x) (input bits) • %IW (3x) (input words) • %MW (4x) (output words and internal words)

Size of Located Data in Case of State RAM

Modicon M340 firmware version 02.40 (and any subsequent supporting version(s)) facilitates the state RAM configuration.

The following table shows the maximum and default sizes of located data in case of state RAM configuration and according to the type of controller.

Type of Objects	Address	BMXP341000 controller		BMXP342000, BMXP3420102, BMXP342020, BMXP3420302 controllers	
		Maximum Size	Default Size	Maximum Size	Default Size
output bits and internal bits	%M (0x)	32765	752	65530	1504
input bits and internal bits	%I (1x)	32765	752	65530	1504
input words and internal words	%IW (3x)	32765	256	65530	512
output words and internal words	%MW (4x)	32765	256	65530	512

Impact of a Cold Start on %I and %IW Areas

After a Cold Start or %S0 setting, the %I and %IW areas are set to 0 and the forcing state is reset.

Controller Modbus Server Uses %I and %IW Areas

- When the state RAM is configured in a controller, the Modbus server access to %I area for all input bits operations and to %IW area for all input words operations.

Base address %SW138 and %SW140 are not used in this case.

The first object address in a Modbus request (0000) corresponds to %I1 or %IW1.

- When state RAM is not configured for a Modicon M340 controller that uses firmware version 02.40 or any subsequent supporting version(s), the behavior of the Modbus server is the same as that in firmware version 02.30.

Base address for %M and %MW in system words %SW139 and %SW141 are used whether the state RAM is configured or not.

Helping Protect Located Data

Before any action on the data memory protection, you must activate this feature in your project settings.

step	Action
1	Click Tools > Project Setting > PLC embedded data .
2	Select the Data memory protect box.
3	Click Apply .

The data memory protection feature is supported by Modicon M340 controllers with firmware version 03.30 or any subsequent supporting version(s). For details, refer to chapter *Data Memory Protection*.

Follow the procedure below to define the located data to help to protect:

Step	Action
1	In the EcoStruxure Control Expert Project Browser , double-click PLC Bus to display the main rack.
2	Double-click on the Modicon M580 controller (but not on the Ethernet connectors) to view its properties.
3	Select the Data Protection tab.
4	Select the check boxes to enable the data protection:
	<p>%M protect</p> <p>The protected area is always located at the end of the %M area. Only the starting address of the protected area can be set. The end address of the protected area is not configurable (grayed).</p> <p>The end address of the protected area equals to n-1 where n is the number of available %M defined by the controller abilities and set in the Configuration tab.</p> <p>If %M protect is selected, you can enter the starting address or the %M data to help to protect. By default, the starting address is 0.</p> <p>Clearing the %M protection reset the starting address.</p>
	<p>%MW protect</p> <p>The protected area is always located at the end of the %M area. Only the starting address of the protected area can be set. The end address of the protected area is not configurable (grayed).</p> <p>The end address of the protected area equals to n-1 where n is the number of available %MW defined by the controller abilities and set in the Configuration tab.</p> <p>If %MW protect is selected, you can enter the starting address or the %M data to protect. By default, the starting address is 0.</p> <p>Clearing the %MW protection reset the starting address.</p> <p>NOTE: Array variables which are mapped on a %MW range must be entirely inside or entirely outside of the protected %MW range.</p>
	<p>I/O protect</p> <p>Select it to help protect all system bits and system words (including DTM objects).</p> <p>NOTE: except state RAM objects.</p>
	<p>%S, %SW protect</p> <p>Select it to help protect all system bits and system words.</p>
5	Validate (Edit > Validate) and save the configuration.

Configuration of an Ethernet Network

Configuring an Ethernet Network

Use the multi-zone Ethernet network configuration screen to declare the communication channel and to configure the necessary parameters for an Ethernet link.

Use the configuration screen to declare the communication channel and to configure the necessary parameters for an Ethernet port. This screen can include the following zones and functions, depending on the module type (controller or communication module):

Zone	Function	
Module Family	Use this to choose the network family to be configured.	
Module Address	After you associate the network with a module, the module address displays.	
Module IP Address	Displays the IP address settings.	
Module Utilities	Select the services that are enabled for the network.	
Service tabs	Tab	Description
	Security tab	Allows enabling and disabling of FTP, TFTP, and HTTP, page 136.
	IP Configuration tab	Enables the configuration of TCP/IP services, page 138
	Messaging tab	Allows the configuration of Access Control, page 141 for the module.
	IO Scanning tab	Allows configuration of I/O Scanning, page 144
	Global Data tab	Allows configuration of Global Data, page 175
	SNMP tab	Allows configuration of SNMP, page 180
	Address Server tab	Allows configuration of the address server, page 185
	Bandwidth tab	Allows you to check that the services configured are compatible with the processing capacity of the Ethernet channel, page 186
	Mail Service web page	Allows configuration of Mail Service, page 189
	NTP tab	Allows configuration of Time Service, page 191

NOTE: The SMTP utility is only available on the controller modules, and the NTP utility is only available on the NOE modules.

NOTE: Instructions on configuring an Ethernet network, page 234 from the communication module in the project browser are found in a later chapter.

Security

Overview

This section describes how to help provide security to your project by enabling and disabling FTP, TFTP, and HTTP services.

Security Features

Security and HTTP, FTP, and TFTP Services

You can enhance security for your project by disabling the FTP/TFTP and HTTP services at times when you do not need to use them. The module uses the HTTP service to provide access to the embedded webpages. The module uses the FTP and TFTP services to support various features including firmware upgrades, and FDR services.

The module HTTP, FTP, and TFTP services can be disabled or enabled using the **Security** screen of the Ethernet network configuration window.

HTTP, FTP, and TFTP services are disabled by default in DTM instances created using Unity Pro 8.1 or later, with respect to the following modules and firmware versions:

- BMX NOE 0100 firmware version 2.90 or later
- BMX NOE 0110 firmware version 6.00 or later
- BMXP3420•0 firmware version 2.60 or later

NOTE:

Unity Pro is the former name of Control Expert for version 13.1 or earlier.

HTTP, FTP, and TFTP services are enabled by default in instances created using previous versions of Control Expert.

You can use Control Expert to enable or disable HTTP, FTP, and TFTP services as described in the following procedure.

If the HTTP, FTP, or TFTP services have been enabled with Control Expert, they can also be enabled or disabled at run time using a DATA_EXCH function block. (See the *Communication Block Library* for Control Expert.)

Authentication with Diffie Hellman Protocol

Perform the following steps to secure authentication by using the Diffie Hellman key exchange protocol.

Step	Action
1	In the Control Expert main menu, select Tools > Project Browser to open the Project Browser .
2	In the Project Browser , navigate to configuration and select AppliLevel 3.60 , to chose the version 03.60 of the controller.
3	In the Properties of Project screen, choose Project & Controller Protection to set a new password.
4	Navigate back to Configuration , select Protected Engineering Link to enable DH protocol.
5	In the Control Expert toolbar, click Validate , then Save your edits

Using Control Expert to Enable and Disable Firmware Upgrade & FDR and Web Access Services

Perform the following steps to enable or disable FTP/TFTP or HTTP services on the module.

Step	Action
1	In the Control Expert main menu, select Tools > Project Browser to open the Project Browser .
2	In the Project Browser , navigate to Communication > Networks , then double-click on an Ethernet network. The Ethernet network configuration window opens.
3	Click the Security tab to open the Security screen.
4	On the Security screen, choose the appropriate setting: (Enabled or Disabled) for the service or services.
5	In the Control Expert toolbar, click Validate , then Save your edits

The edits do not take effect until they are successfully downloaded from your PC to the CPU and from the CPU to the communication modules and network devices.

IP Configuration Parameters

About this Section

This section introduces the configuration parameters on the **IP Configuration** tab.

The IP Configuration Tab

Introduction

To communicate on Ethernet networks through the BMX NOE 01x0 or BMX P34 20x0 modules, it is necessary to set the configuration parameters linked to TCP/IP. On the **IP Configuration** tab you can:

- declare the communication channel
- configure the necessary parameters for an Ethernet port

IP Configuration Tab

The following procedure shows how to access the **IP Configuration** tab from the index page:

Step	Action
1	Access the module configuration screen.
2	Select the IP Configuration tab (see illustration below).

The following figure shows the **IP Configuration** tab:

NOE configuration screen:

IP Configuration	Messaging	IO Scanning	Global Data	SNMP	Address Server	NTP	Bandwidth
IP Address Configuration							
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Configured							
		IP Address	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.100"/>				
		Subnetwork mask	<input type="text" value="255.255.0.0"/>				
		Gateway Address	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>				
<input type="radio"/> From a server							
		Device Name	<input type="text"/>				
Ethernet configuration							
		<input checked="" type="radio"/> Ethernet II	<input type="radio"/> 802.3				
PLC bus	Ethernet_NOE_1						

CPU configuration screen:

IP Configuration	Messaging	SNMP	SMTP	Bandwidth	
IP Address Configuration					
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Configured					
		IP Address	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.100"/>		
		Subnetwork mask	<input type="text" value="255.255.0.0"/>		
		Gateway Address	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>		
<input type="radio"/> From a server					
		Device Name	<input type="text"/>		
Ethernet configuration					
		<input checked="" type="radio"/> Ethernet II	<input type="radio"/> 802.3		
PLC bus	Ethernet_CPU				

The IP configuration parameter zones are discussed in detail elsewhere in this guide:

- IP Address configuration, page 140
- Ethernet configuration, page 141

Configuration Parameters for IP Addresses

Introduction

On the IP Configuration tab, page 138, you can define the IP address of a module in the **IP Address Configuration** zone. The options are:

- **Configured:** Manually enter the IP address, subnetwork mask, and gateway address.
- **From a server:** The configuration is supplied by a server device.

NOTE: To configure IP addresses, obtain the appropriate network address and subnetwork mask from your system administrator. Elsewhere in this guide is detailed information for IP addressing, page 58.

Configured IP Address

Selecting the **Configured** field allows manual configuration according to your own requirements:

- **IP Address:** The IP address of the module
- **Subnetwork mask:** The mask defines the part allocated to the subnetwork identifier in the IP address.
- **Gateway Address:** The gateway address is the IP address of the default gateway to which messages for other networks are transmitted.

NOTE: If the module is connected to an existing TCP/IP network, the IP addresses are administered globally, therefore the IP parameters must be configured. Otherwise there is a risk of disturbance on the existing network caused by possible double allocation of the IP addresses.

From a Server

Selecting the **From a server** field allows the module's IP address to be configured from a remote device acting as a DHCP/BOOTP server, page 81. When the **From a server** button is active:

- Leaving the **Device Name** field empty facilitates communications that are compatible with any setting on the rotary switches, page 60.
- To use a device name in the **Device Name** field, set the lower rotary switch to its STORED position. If you set the switch any other position, the result depends on the setting of the lower rotary switch, as described in the Ethernet Port Status table, page 65.
- The configured IP parameters have no effect and are grayed out.

NOTE: The M340 Ethernet modules will not receive an IP address from a BOOTP/DHCP server on application download if the IP configuration has not changed.

NOTE: The maximum length for the device name is 16 characters. Valid characters include alphanumerics (0 to 9, A to Z) and underscores.

Ethernet Frame Format

Introduction

The **Ethernet configuration** field on the IP Configuration tab, page 138 is used to define the frame format for TCP/IP communications in accordance with those formats required by end devices (valid for configured IP addresses only). Options are:

- **Ethernet II:** The Ethernet II format complies with the RFC 894 standard (the most common standard).
- **802.3:** The 802.3 format complies with the RFC 1042 standard.

Messaging Configuration Parameters

About this Section

The section discusses the configuration of IP messaging parameters.

The Messaging Configuration Tab

Introduction

To limit access to the BMX NOE 01x0 and BMX P34 20x0 CPUs, set the access control parameters on the **Messaging** tab.

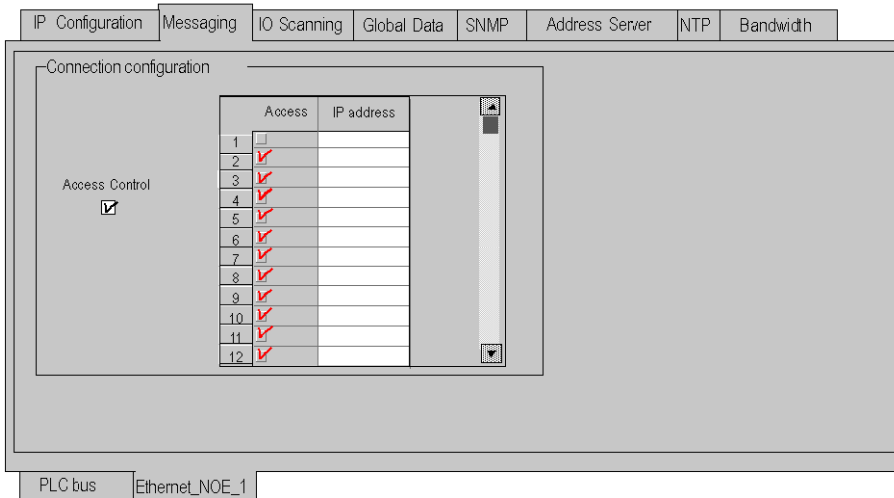
Messaging Tab

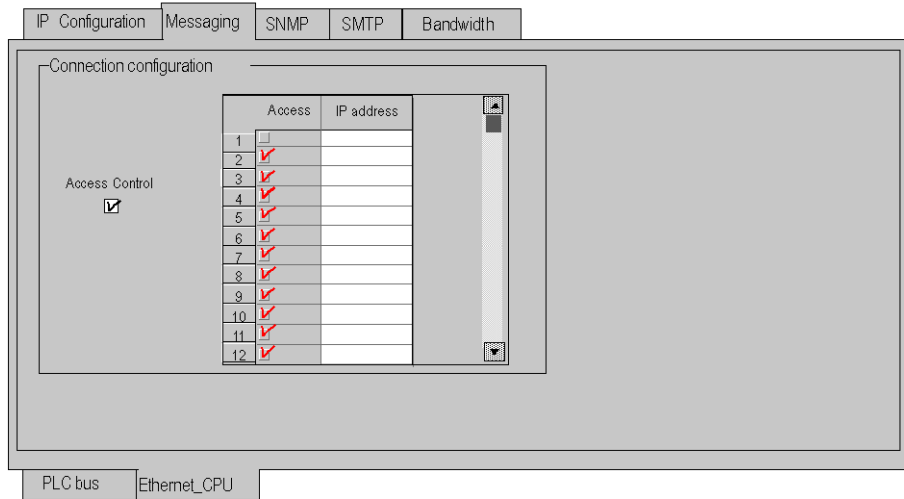
The following procedure shows how to access the **Messaging** page from the index page:

Step	Action
1	Access the module configuration screen.
2	Select the Messaging tab (see illustration below).

The **Messaging** tab is shown below:

NOE configuration screen:



CPU configuration screen:

The messaging configuration parameters are discussed in detail on the following pages.

Messaging Configuration Parameters

Accessing Messaging Configuration Parameters

Configuration parameters can be accessed in two areas on the Messaging tab screen:

- the **Connection Configuration** area
- the **Access Control** area

Connection Configuration Area

The **Connection Configuration** area is used to:

- activate an access control utility
- list the remote devices that can connect to the module according to a communication protocol

Access Control

The **Access Control** box is used to activate or deactivate control of remote devices that are attempting to open a TCP connection to the module. The functionality depends on whether the box is checked or not:

- **checked:** Access control management is activated and the **Access** column of the table is active (no longer grayed out).
 - The module can communicate only with the addresses entered in the 128 available spaces in the **IP address** column that have a check mark in the **Access** column.

NOTE: Uncheck the box in the **Access** column of all rows that have no associated **IP address** in the **IP address** column. If you leave a box checked in the **Access** column and the **IP address** field empty, your application is vulnerable to unwanted access.

- With the module in client mode it can only connect to remote devices selected by the **Access** column in the **Connection Configuration** table.
- **unchecked:** Access control management is inoperative and the **Access** column of the table is not active (grayed out).
 - With the module in server mode, remote third-party devices can connect as clients (before communicating with the module) without being declared in the table.

NOTE: Access control is only effective on the TCP/IP profile and assists module operations in server and client mode.

I/O Scanner Configuration Parameters

About this Section

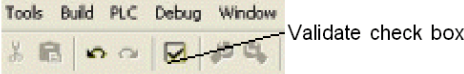
This section introduces the configuration parameters linked to the I/O Scanner.

An I/O Scanner in the BMX NOE 01x0 communication modules transfer data between network devices and allows a CPU to regularly read data from and write data to scanned devices. The I/O Scanner is configured with Control Expert.

The I/O Scanning Tab

Introduction

Use the I/O Scanner to scan I/O modules to get inputs and set outputs.

Step	Action
6	Enter the parameter settings under each of the column headings for one line of the I/O Scanner Configuration. Refer to I/O Scanning Parameters (below) to see the settings used for this example.
7	Click the validate check box in the upper tool bar to confirm the I/O scanning parameter settings. 

I/O Scanning Parameters above Table

Master %MW zone parameters:

Parameter	Field	Description
Read Ref.	A pair of data boxes — From and to	The values in these boxes define the range of destination address values in the CPU for the data read from each device. The addresses you enter here are displayed in the RD Master Object column of the dialog. In the example above, the Read Ref. values range from 0 to 599. Note that these values are displayed as %MW0, %MW599, etc. in the Master Object column.
Write Ref.	A pair of data boxes — From and to	The values in these boxes define the range of source address values in the CPU. The address you enter here is displayed in the WR Master Object column. In the example above, values starting at %MW2000 are shown in the WR Master Object column.

The **Repetitive rate step** parameter:

Parameter	Field	Description
Repetitive rate step	data box	<p>The Repetitive rate step is set in multiples of 5 ms (the minimum) through 200 ms (the maximum).</p> <p>The Repetitive rate (ms) column is where you enter a rate of time for how often you want the I/O scanner to send a query to the device after the rate has timed out.</p> <p>NOTE: The Repetitive rate (ms) of the I/O scanner table is a multiple of the rate displayed in the Repetitive rate step box. The real repetitive rate being executed by the I/O scanner service is shown in the Repetitive rate (ms) column.</p> <p>NOTE: An entry in the Repetitive rate (ms) column is rounded up to the next multiple that was entered in the Repetitive rate step if the entry is not a multiple of the Repetitive rate step.</p> <p>For example, if the entry in the Repetitive rate step is 5 and you enter a 7 in the Repetitive rate (ms) column, the 7 is rounded up to 10. If you change the Repetitive rate step to 6 and enter a 7 in the Repetitive rate (ms) column, the 7 is rounded up to 12.</p>

I/O Scanning Table Parameters

The **I/O Scanning** table configuration parameters are:

Parameter	Description	Example
Entry #	<p>This is the first column; it has no name.</p> <p>Valid range: 1 ... 64</p> <p>Each entry represents an I/O Scanning exchange on the network.</p>	
IP address	This is the IP address of the scanned Ethernet slave device.	192.168.1.100
Device Name	<p>To configure a device (Advantys island, DTM or PRA), click the ... button to open the Property box, page 161 to start the device configuration software.</p> <p>For an introduction to this procedure for Advantys, go to Advantys configuration, page 152.</p> <p>For an introduction to this procedure for DTMs, go to PRM Master DTM configuration, page 156.</p> <p>For an introduction to this procedure for PRA, go to BMX PRA 0100 configuration, page 158.</p> <p>NOTE: While the Property box is open, I/O scanning cannot be edited.</p>	MySTB1, Master_PRM_DTM_10, PRA1
Unit ID	<p>This field associates the slave address of the device connected to an Ethernet/Modbus gateway with the IP address of that gateway:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • value range: 1 to 255 • default value: 255 <p>When using a bridge, enter the bridge index (1 to 255) in this field.</p>	255
Slave Syntax	<p>Use this drop-down menu to pick the way RD Ref Slave and WR Ref Slave values are displayed. The 4 choices are (with an example):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Index: 100 • Modbus: 400101 • IEC 0: %MW100 • IEC 1: %MW101 	Index (default value)
Health Timeout (ms)	<p>This field sets the maximum interval between the responses from a remote device:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • range: 0ms to 50 seconds • interval: 1ms <p>After this time period expires, the received data is invalid.</p> <p>The health timeout must longer than the repetitive rate. For an NOE Ethernet module, it also must be longer than the CPU scan time.</p>	1500ms

Parameter	Description	Example
Repetitive rate (ms)	The rate at which data will be scanned, from 0...60000 in multiples of the Repetitive rate step .	60ms
RD Master Object*	Destination address in the master PLC where, from each device, newly read information is stored. This parameter cannot be accessed. It is calculated automatically as the sum of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The From address (beginning) of Read ref. (in the zone above the table) The RD length value (in the table below) 	%mw10
RD Ref Slave**	Source address index in the slave/remote device	The format of this value depends on the Slave Syntax : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Index: 5 Modbus: 400006 IEC 0: %MW5 IEC 1: %MW6
RD length	Number of words to read	10
Last value (input)	This field configures the behavior of inputs in the event of an access error in relation to the remote device (for example: inoperative network or device power supply, etc.): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to 0: fall back to 0 Hold last: maintain last value 	Hold last
WR Master Object*	Source address of the master PLC whose data is being written into the slave/remote device. This parameter cannot be accessed. It is calculated automatically as the sum of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The From address (beginning) of Write ref. (in the zone above the table) The WR length value (in the table below) Write operations are always performed at the word level.	%mw20
WR Ref Slave**	The address of the first word written into the slave/remote device.	The format of this value depends on the Slave Syntax : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Index: 1 Modbus: 400002 IEC 0: %MW1 IEC 1: %MW2
WR length	Number of words to be written	10

Parameter	Description	Example
Gateway/ Bridge Device	To allow slower TCP/IP network devices (ex: gateways and bridge) to be compatible with the I/O Scanner: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select the check box to enable this feature. Defines a new bit, and sets it to high (1). Deselect the check box to disable this feature (default). Defines a new bit, and sets it to zero (0). 	Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disable = deselected check box Enable = selected check box
Description	Additional information	
*Master refers to the client PLC that makes the request.		
**Slave refers to the server from which data is read or to which data is written.		

NOTE: For more information about the I/O Scanning table, refer to the Contextual Menu for Copy/Cut/Paste topic, page 149.

NOTE: For more information about the I/O Scanning table, refer to the I/O Scanning with Multiple Lines topic, page 150.

I/O Scanning Contextual Menu for Copy/Cut/Paste

At a Glance

A right-click on a line in the **I/O Scanning** table opens the **I/O Scanning Contextual Menu**. Use this menu to perform common operations on the lines of the **I/O Scanning** table, such as, delete a device, copy & paste, cut & paste, insert a new line, etc.

Contextual Menu

The following illustration is the **I/O Scanning** contextual menu:



The following table describes the menu functions:

Menu Item	Description
Delete Device	<p>For an ACS or PRA configuration, Delete Device permanently deletes the Device Name and all its data (and associated ACS symbols).</p> <p>For a PRM Master DTM, its link to the I/O Scanning table is deleted,</p> <p>NOTE: Deleting a PRM Master DTM link from the I/O Scanning table does not delete the corresponding DTM from the connectivity tree in the DTM Browser.</p>
Cut line(s)	<p>Cut line(s) copies and deletes the selected I/O Scanning lines. The lines are copied without the Device Name information.</p> <p>For an ACS or PRA configuration, it permanently deletes the Device Name and all its data (and associated ACS symbols).</p> <p>For a PRM Master DTM, the link between the DTM and the I/O Scanning line is removed.</p>
Copy line(s)	Copy line(s) copies the selected lines, but without the Device Name .
Paste line(s)	<p>Paste line(s) has 2 actions depending on its target line:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the line is empty, it fills the line with the copied line (without a Device Name) • If the line is not empty, it replaces the line with the copied line (without a Device Name). <p>Be careful, it also permanently deletes the Device Name link to the I/O Scanning table and, for an ACS or PRA configuration, all its data (and associated ACS symbols) of the old line before replacing it with the copied line.</p>
Insert copied line(s)	<p>Insert copied line(s) inserts the copied line between the selected line and the line just above it.</p> <p>Be careful with ACS or DTM configurations, all the lines below the inserted line become desynchronized. To synchronize these lines, open and close the device configuration tool, then do an Update from the Property box, page 161.</p>
Insert empty line	<p>Insert empty line inserts an empty line above the line selected line.</p> <p>Inserting an empty line does not desynchronize the devices below the line, but using this line for a new device can, depending the number of words needed, desynchronize the devices below the line.</p>
Pack all lines	Pack all lines removes any empty lines between the top of the I/O Scanning table and the last non-empty of the table.

I/O Scanning with Multiple Lines

At a Glance

Modbus exchanges are limited to a maximum of 125 input words and 100 output words. If an application needs to exchange more than these limits for a device, more than one **I/O Scanning** line can be used: multiple lines for one device.

When the length is higher than the authorized limit for one Modbus exchange, the length is divided into 2 or more Modbus exchanges. New lines are created for each Modbus exchanges with the PLC.

The following **I/O Scanning** table is used for the multiple device lines example:

Slave ID	IP Address	Device Name	Unit ID	Slave System	Modbus Transm. (bits)	Response rate (ms)	RD Master Offset	RD Ref. Slave	RD Length	Last value (bytes)	WR Master Offset	WR Ref. Slave	WR Length	Gateway Slave Device	Description
1	192.168.1.1	AdvT51	250	Modbus	1500	60	START0	0	100	Word last	START000	0	50		Disable
2	192.168.1.2	AdvT51	250	Modbus	1500	60	START00	0	300	Word last	START000	0	110		Enable
							START01	0	125		START010	0	100		
							START02	0	100		START020	0	100		
							START03	0	125		START030	0	100		
							START04	0	100		START040	0	100		
							START05	0	100		START050	0	100		
							START06	0	100		START060	0	100		
							START07	0	100		START070	0	100		
							START08	0	100		START080	0	100		
							START09	0	100		START090	0	100		
							START10	0	100		START100	0	100		
							START11	0	100		START110	0	100		
							START12	0	100		START120	0	100		
							START13	0	100		START130	0	100		
							START14	0	100		START140	0	100		
							START15	0	100		START150	0	100		
							START16	0	100		START160	0	100		
							START17	0	100		START170	0	100		
							START18	0	100		START180	0	100		
							START19	0	100		START190	0	100		
							START20	0	100		START200	0	100		
							START21	0	100		START210	0	100		
							START22	0	100		START220	0	100		
							START23	0	100		START230	0	100		
							START24	0	100		START240	0	100		
							START25	0	100		START250	0	100		
							START26	0	100		START260	0	100		
							START27	0	100		START270	0	100		
							START28	0	100		START280	0	100		
							START29	0	100		START290	0	100		
							START30	0	100		START300	0	100		

NOTE: This example shows an Advantys island, but DTM and PRA devices work the same way.

Multiple Line Length Configuration Example

In this example, the *first* (the main) **I/O Scanning** line 2 contains all the information for the exchanges with the device including the totals for the **RD length** and **WR length**.

The *second* line 2 contains the specific word lengths (125 and 100) needed so that it can also be used for part of the exchanges.

Line 2 needs a **RD length** of 300 word and a **WR length** of 110 words. How many extra lines are needed?

- **RD length** = $300/125 = 2.72 = 3$ lines needed
- **WR length** = $110/100 = 1.10 = 2$ lines needed

The larger of the 2 numbers is used:

- Three lines are needed to accommodate the **RD length**: 125 words, 125 words, 50 words for a total of 300 words
- The 3 lines for the **WR length** are: 100 words, 10 words, 0 words for a total of 110 words

The *second* line 2, line 3, and line 4 correspond to the Modbus exchange queries.

When multiple lines are used, only the **RD length** and **WR length** columns of these new lines can be edited. In the case of Advantys or DTM, the software supplies the **RD length** and the **WR length**, and they cannot be changed in the **I/O Scanning** table.

NOTE: It is not necessary to have a **Device Name** defined to use multiple lines.

The total number of words allowed in an **I/O Scanning** table is:

- 4 KW for Premium extended and Quantum networks

- 2 KW for Premium ETY and M340 NOE modules

Line Length for Multiple Word Variables

When using variables with 2 or more words, adjust the **RD** and **WR lengths** so that a variable is not partly on one **I/O Scanning** line and partly on the next. Because the 2 newly created lines result in 2 independent Modbus exchanges that can be sent non-synchronized to the device. The variables can receive incorrect values (if the 2 parts are received at different times). It may be necessary to use a **RD length** < 125 and a **WR length** < 100 for some of the scanned lines, in order to get each variable on only one exchange line.

Avoid sending parts of a variable data in 2 non-synchronized **I/O Scanning** Modbus exchanges.

▲ WARNING

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

Verify that multiple word variables are completely on the same **I/O Scanning** line.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

Introduction to Configuring Advantys from Control Expert

At a Glance

The Advantys Configuration Software (ACS) is integrated in Control Expert. This allows you to configure Advantys STB and OTB islands from the Control Expert **Ethernet I/O scanning** tab.

Configuring an Advantys Island

⚠ WARNING

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

- Always launch ACS from Control Expert in order to synchronize variables and data between Control Expert and ACS.
- Stop the controller before transferring an ACS configuration and/or I/O scanning modifications.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

The following procedure configures an Advantys STB or OTB island:

Step	Action	Results
1	Open the Ethernet network configuration screen.	
2	In the Module Utilities zone select YES for IO Scanning .	
3	Select the I/O Scanning tab.	I/O Scanning screen opens.
4	Enter, on a free line, the IP address for the connection you want to use to communicate with the Advantys island.	
5	Enter RD length and WR length on the same line. The lengths must be long enough for the expected Advantys configuration.	
6	Validate the I/O Scanning screen.	
7	Click on the ... button (that is next to Device Name cell on the same line).	The Property box, page 161 opens.
8	Select STB or OTB in the Device Type drop-down menu.	
9	Enter a Device Name (following the naming rules, page 164).	

Step	Action	Results
10	<p>You have 2 choices:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> If you want to go to ACS now to configure an island, click on the Launch Advantys Configuration Software button. Click on Yes in the “<i>Confirm device name and type</i>” Message Box and go to Step 11. If you want to configure the Advantys island later, click on the OK button. Click on Yes in the “<i>Confirm device name and type</i>” Message Box. To open the ACS later: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Carry out Step 7. Click on the Launch Advantys Configuration Software button. 	<p>Results for both 1. and 2. are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A Control Expert message box opens: “<i>The device name and device type won’t be modifiable. Do you want to confirm the device name and device type?</i>” The Device Type and Device Name are verified and saved. The Property box closes.
11	<p>After ACS opens, configure your Advantys island.</p> <p>NOTE: While the ACS is open Ethernet screen is locked and cannot be edited, but the other Control Expert services can be edited.</p> <p>NOTE: The <code>User Defined Label</code> must be filled in the <code>IO image</code>. If not, the Advantys variable will no be added in the Control Expert Data Editor.</p>	
12	<p>When your Advantys island has been built and validated, close ACS.</p>	<p>A Control Expert message box opens “<i>Do you want to update your symbols now?</i>”</p>
13	<p>You have 2 choices:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click on Yes in the “<i>update</i>” Message Box and go to Step 14. Click on No in the “<i>update</i>” Message Box. <p>You are returned to the I/O Scanning screen without carrying out the Yes results.</p> <p>Later, when you want to update the Advantys symbols into Control Expert:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Carry out Step 7 In the Property box, click on the Update button and go to Step 14. 	<p>If you clicked on No:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> You are returned to I/O Scanning without carrying out the results in Step 14. The Device Name is displayed in the I/O Scanning in red. This indicates that the island configuration has not been synchronized with Control Expert.

Step	Action	Results
14	Your Advantys island configuration is being synchronized with Control Expert. After the synchronization is finished, you are returned to I/O Scanning . Verify that the Device Name is now displayed in black.	The results are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Advantys island modifications are synchronized with the Control Expert application. The Advantys island symbols are imported into the Control Expert Data Editor. The Advantys Device Name is displayed in the I/O Scanning in black. This indicates that the island configuration is synchronized.
15	Build your Control Expert application.	
16	STOP the PLC.	
17	Transfer: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Control Expert application to the PLC STB or OTB configuration to the Advantys island using ACS 	
18	RUN your application in the PLC.	

Copy an Existing Island

This following procedure copies an existing Advantys island file (*.isl) into a new Advantys island configuration:

Step	Action
1	From Control Expert, open a new Advantys island in ACS.
2	In ACS, select File menu > Copy Island Contents .
3	In the Open island window, select the island file (*.isl) to copy.
4	Click on Yes in the “Do you want to proceed?” message box.
5	The message “Island file has been saved.” in the Log Window verifies that the operation was successful.

Copy an Island File to a New Location

The following procedure copies an Advantys island file (*.isl) to a new directory:

Step	Action
1	In ACS, open an island configuration, for example, STB1.
2	Select File menu => Copy STB1 Contents
3	In the Copy STB1.isl to window, select the target directory.
4	The message "A copy of the island file has been saved with another name." includes in the Log Window verifies that the operation was successful. The name is new because its path has changed.

Introduction to Configuring the PRM Master DTM

At a Glance

The **PRM Bus Master** uses the Control Expert **I/O Scanner** to communicate with the CPU through an Ethernet port. This requires configuring the **PRM Master DTM** in the Control Expert Ethernet **I/O Scanning** tab.

Configuring a PRM Master DTM

The following procedure configures a **PRM Master DTM** in the **I/O Scanner**:

Step	Action
1	Install the PRM Master DTM on the Host PC. NOTE: After installing new DTMs, the Hardware Catalog must be updated.
2	Add a PRM Master DTM to the connectivity tree in the DTM Browser using the contextual Device menu service.
3	In the DTM Browser, select the PRM Master and use the contextual Device menu function to open the DTM PRM Offline Parameter screen.
4	In the General Setting part of this screen set the IP address of the PRM device .
5	Open the I/O Scanning configuration editor (tab).
6	In the Module Utilities zone select YES for IO Scanning .
7	Select the I/O Scanning tab. Results: I/O Scanning configuration editor opens.
8	Enter, on a free line, the IP address for the connection to be used to communicate with the PRM Bus Master .
9	Set correct values for the Read Ref. and Write Ref. parameters.

Step	Action
10	Enter RD length and WR length for the IP address line (within the Read Ref. and Write Ref. constraints). NOTE: The lengths must be long enough for the expected configuration PRM Master DTM and its subnode DTMs.
11	Validate the I/O Scanning screen.
12	Click on the ... button (next to Device Name cell). Results: The Property box, page 161 opens.
13	Select DTM in the Device Type drop-down menu.
14	Select the protocol in the DTM Protocol drop-down menu.
15	Select a PRM Master DTM in the DTM Name drop-down menu.
16	Click on OK to validate the choices you made. Results: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Device Type, Device Protocol and Device Name are verified and saved. • The Property box closes.
17	Update the I/O Scanning line, refer to Updating I/O Scanning for a PRM Master DTM , page 157.
18	Build the Control Expert application.
19	Stop the PLC.
20	Transfer the Control Expert application to the PLC.
21	In the DTM Browser, right click on PRM Master and select the Connect function.
22	In the DTM Browser, right click on PRM Master and select the Store data to device function.
23	Run the application in the PLC.

Updating I/O Scanning for a PRM Master DTM

The following procedure updates the **I/O Scanning** information for a **PRM Master DTM**:

Step	Action
1	Configure and validate the PRM Bus Masters in the DTM Browser using the contextual Device menu function.
2	Open the I/O Scanning configuration editor (tab).

Step	Action
3	Click on the ... button (that is next to the Device Name of the PRM Master DTM to update).
4	<p>In the open Property box, page 161, click on the Update button.</p> <p>Results:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The PRM Master DTM modifications are synchronized with the Control Expert application. • The PRM Master DTM symbols are imported into the Control Expert Data editor. • The DTM Name is displayed in the I/O Scanning configuration tab in black. This indicates that the PRM configuration is synchronized. • The Property box closes.

Introduction to Configuring a BMX PRA 0100 from Control Expert

At a Glance

Control Expert allows configuration of BMX PRA 0100 modules through the Ethernet **I/O scanning** tab. The PRA device configuration is done in a **second** instance of Control Expert.

Configuring a PRA

The following procedure configures a PRA device:

Step	Action	Results
1	Open the Ethernet network configuration screen.	
2	In the Module Utilities zone select YES for IO Scanning .	
3	Select the I/O Scanning tab.	I/O Scanning screen opens.
4	<p>Enter, on a free line, the IP address for the connection you want to use to communicate with the PRA.</p> <p>NOTE: The IP address in the I/O Scanning table must be the same as the IP address of the PRA device.</p>	
5	Enter RD length and WR length on the same line.	
6	Validate the I/O Scanning screen.	

Step	Action	Results
7	Click on the ... button (that is next to Device Name cell on the same line).	The Property box, page 161 opens.
8	Select PRA in the Device Type drop-down menu.	
9	Enter a Device Name (following the naming rules, page 164).	
10	<p>You have 2 choices:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> If you want to now configure a PRA, click on the Launch PRA button. Click on Yes in the “<i>Confirm device name and type</i>” Message Box and go to Step 11. If you want to configure a PRA later, click on the OK button. Click on Yes in the “<i>Confirm device name and type</i>” Message Box. NOTE: The Device Name becomes red in the I/O Scanning table. This indicates that a PRA has not been configured for the table line that contains the Device Name <p>To configure a PRA later:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Carry out Step 7. Click on the Launch PRA button. <p>NOTE: While the second PRA instance of Control Expert is running no changes can be made to the Ethernet Editor in the first (master) instance of Control Expert.</p>	<p>Results for both 1. and 2. are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A Control Expert message box opens: “<i>The device name and device type won't be modifiable. Do you want to confirm the device name and device type?</i>” The Device Type and Device Name are verified and saved. The Property box closes.
11	<p>After the second instance of Control Expert opens:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> File menu > Open Change the file type to .XEF Open the PRA application template, PRA_Template.XEF 	
12	<p>When your PRA application is configured:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If desired, you can build the PRA application now. Save the application. NOTE: The Save As function is not available. To copy your PRA application use the Export or Save Archive function. Close this instance of Control Expert. NOTE: You are asked if you want to save the PRA application in the master application *.stu file. If you select No, all changes are lost. 	

Step	Action	Results
	<p>NOTE: Later you can build your PRA application by carrying out Step 7. Because the PRA application is saved (embedded) in the master application *.stu file, it is opened. You can then build the PRA application.</p> <p>NOTE: If there is no PRA application in the master *.stu, an empty application is opened (as happens the first time the Launch PRA button is used in the Property box).</p>	
13	Build your Control Expert application.	
14	STOP the PLC.	
15	Transfer: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Control Expert application to the PLC • PRA configuration to the PRA device <p>NOTE: There are no imported variables, the user must ensure the synchronization of the data exchange.</p>	
16	RUN your application in the PLC.	

NOTE: When the second (**PRA**) instance of Control Expert is closed, there is no indication if the **PRA** application has been built or not.

Copy an Existing PRA Application

This following procedure copies an existing **PRA** application:

Step	Action
1	From the Control Expert I/O Scanning table using the ... button, open an existing PRA application.
2	In the second Control Expert instance, save the existing PRA application with a new name as a *.sta or .xef file.
3	Close this second Control Expert instance.
4	In the Control Expert I/O Scanning table create a new PRA application on a new line.
5	Import or Open the *.xef or *.sta file previously saved.
6	If desired, build the new PRA application and transfer it to the PRA device.
7	Close the second Control Expert instance.

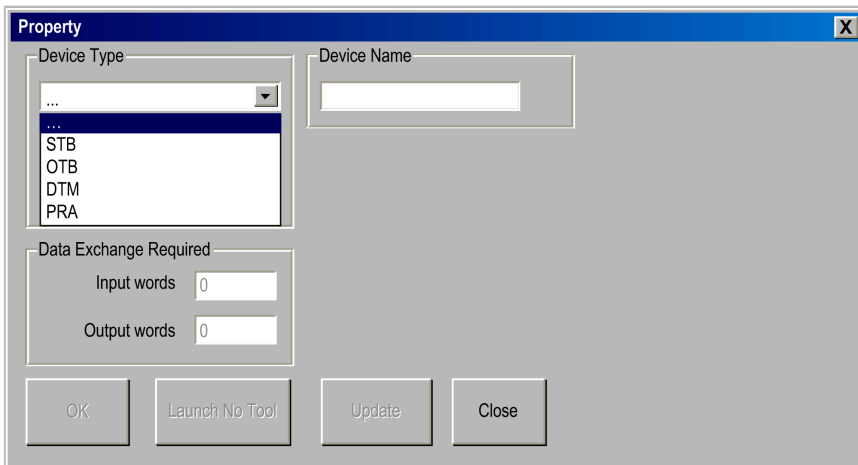
Property Box

At Glance

The **Property** box is the link between Control Expert and a device configuration tool. It is used to select and name a device and to launch the configuration tool for the device.

Property Box

The following illustration is the **Property** box before selecting the **Device Type**.



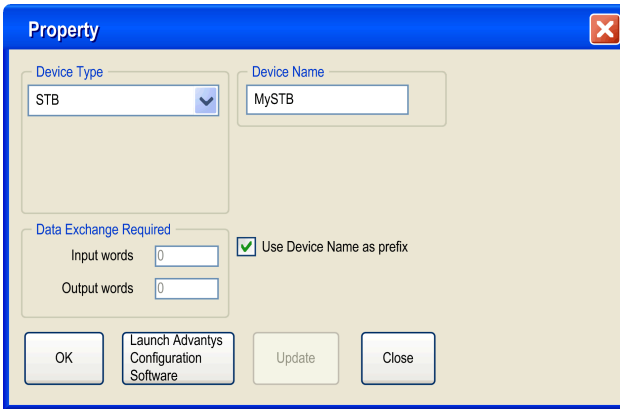
For details on how top use the **Property** box, refer to:

- Advantys, page 161
- DTM, page 165
- BMX PRA 0100, page 163

Property Box for Advantys

This **Property** box allows you to choose the name and type of Advantys island to be configured using the Advantys Configuration Software (ACS).

The following illustration is the **Property** box for Advantys *after* **Device Type** and **Device Name** entered:



Property Box for Advantys Elements

The elements of the Advantys **Property** box are:

Element	Description
Device Type	Selection of a STB or OTB device is made from this drop-down list. After the first validation (using the OK or Launch Advantys button) the Device Type cannot be changed.
Device Name	The Device Name , page 164 is used as a prefix to all variables created for an Advantys island in ACS. This allows unique variables for duplicated islands. After validation (using the OK or Launch Advantys button) the Device Name cannot be changed.
Data Exchange Required	These are the minimum number of words necessary for communication between the Control Expert module and the Advantys island. These values cannot be changed via the Property box. NOTE: Increasing the RD/WR lengths via the I/O Scanning tab leaves enough data exchange words for the future expansion of your Advantys island. Expanding an island that does not use the last line in the I/O Scanning table requires changing the values for all the lines below the line that needs the additional exchange words.
Use Device Name as prefix	If this checkbox is unchecked, the user is in charge of giving unique names to the variables and symbols in all Advantys islands. This checkbox is only available for ASC V5.5 or higher. For versions less than 5.5 the Device Name is automatically added to all variables and symbols in all Advantys islands.
OK	This button is only available after entering the Device Type and Device Name . When clicked, the Device Type and Device Name are checked to see if they are valid.

Element	Description
	<p>If there is a problem, a message box opens explaining the why they were not valid.</p> <p>OK is only available during the first use of the Property box for a new island.</p>
Launch Advantys Configuration Software	<p>This button is only available if both:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Device Type and Device Name have been entered ACS is installed <p>This button does two things:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> It carries out the action of the OK button If there is no problem during validation, it launches ACS
Update	<p>When clicked, the ACS modifications are synchronized with your Control Expert application (after these modifications have been validated in ACS).</p> <p>It also imports and updates all ACS symbols and variables into the Control Expert variable manager.</p> <p>NOTE: All variables modified in ACS are deleted and rewritten in the Control Expert Data Editor. But they are not updated in the program.</p>
Close	This button closes the Property box without saving anything.

Property Box for BMX PRA 0100

This **Property** box allows you to choose the name for the PRA module to be configured.

The following illustration is the **Property** box for the PRA *after* **Device Name** validation:

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Property" with a blue border and a close button in the top right corner. The dialog is divided into several sections:

- Device Type:** A dropdown menu showing "PRA".
- Device Name:** A text input field containing "PRA5".
- Data Exchange Required:** A section with two input fields: "Input words" and "Output words", both set to "0".
- Buttons:** Four buttons are located at the bottom: "OK", "Launch PRA", "Update", and "Close".

Property Box for PRA Elements

The elements of the PRA **Property** box are:

Element	Description
Device Type	Selection of the PRA device is made from this drop-down list. After the first validation (using the OK or Launch PRA button) the Device Type cannot be changed.
Device Name	The Device Name , page 164 is the name of PRA application.
Data Exchange Required	This is not used when configuring a PRA device.
OK	This button is only available after entering the Device Type and Device Name . When clicked, the Device Type and Device Name are checked to see if they are valid. If there is a problem, a message box opens explaining why they are not valid. OK is only available during the first use of the Property box for a new PRA configuration.
Launch PRA	This button is only available if the Device Type and Device Name has been entered. This button does two things: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • It carries out the action of the OK button • If there is no problem during validation, it launches another instance of Control Expert, which is used to do the actual configuration of the PRA.
Close	This button closes the Property box without saving anything.

Valid Name

A valid **Device Name** for a configuration:

- Does not already exist in the application
- Is not a empty name
- Starts with a letter
- Has a maximum of 8 characters
- Only ASCII characters, not Unicode characters
- Has no spaces
- Follows the Windows file naming conventions: no slashes, question marks, etc.
- Follows Control Expert variable naming conventions

Property Box for a PRM Master DTM

This **Property** box allows you to choose the type and protocol for a **PRM Master DTM**:

The following illustration is the **Property** box *after* selecting the **Device Type**, **DTM Protocol** and **DTM Name**:

Property Box PRM Master DTM Elements

The elements of the DTM **Property** box are:

Element	Description
Device Type	Selection of DTM device type is made from this drop-down list.
DTM Protocol	Select the protocol to be used from this drop-down list. This list contains the DTM protocols of all the DTMs in the DTM Browser that can be linked with I/O Scanning.
Device Name	Select a PRM Master DTM from this drop-down list. This list uses the DTM Browser Alias names. This list contains all the PRM Master DTMs in the DTM Browser that support the selected DTM Protocol. To validate the choices, click on the OK button.
Data Exchange Required	These are the minimum number of words necessary for communication between Control Expert and the PRM Master DTMs . These values cannot be changed via the Property box. NOTE: Increasing the RD/WR lengths via the I/O Scanning tab leaves enough data exchange words for the future expansion of your DTM topology tree. Expanding a tree

Element	Description
	that does not use the last line in the I/O Scanning table requires changing the values for all the lines below the line that needs the additional exchange words.
OK	<p>The OK button is only available after selecting the Device Type, DTM Protocol and DTM Name.</p> <p>When clicked, the DTM Protocol and DTM Name are checked to see if they are valid.</p> <p>If there is a problem, a message box opens explaining the why they were not valid.</p> <p>The OK button is only available during the first use of the Property box for a new PRM Master DTM.</p>
Launch No Tool	This button is never available for PRM Master DTMs .
Update	Use the Update button after validating or changing the configuration of the linked PRM Master DTM . Refer to Update I/O Scanning for a PRM Master DTM, page 157.
Close	The Close button closes the Property box without saving anything.

Saving an Advantys Configuration in an Control Application

At a Glance

ACS saves an island configuration in an *.isl file. To add the island to an application, it is necessary for Control Expert to know the location of the island configuration information.

Saving the Configuration

To save your island configuration information, save your Control Expert application as a *.stu or *.sta file. The *.isl file is automatically included in these files.

Uploading or Importing

There are 2 situations where the information contained in the *.isl file is not available:

1. Uploading the application running in the PLC
2. Importing an *.xef file

In these 2 cases, if ACS is launched from the **Property** box, page 161, it automatically tries to open the latest **Device Name.isl** file the Control Expert **General Path => Project Path** directory:

- If the same PC is used for the import (upload) and export (download) and the Control Expert **Project Path** has not changed, the island configuration is synchronized with ACS.
- If the same PC is not used for the import (upload) and export (download) or if the Control Expert Project Path has changed, either:
 - Create a new island
 - Use the **File** menu => **Copy Island Contents** function

NOTE: The new **Device Name.isl** file is copied to the **Project Path** directory.

Managed Variables

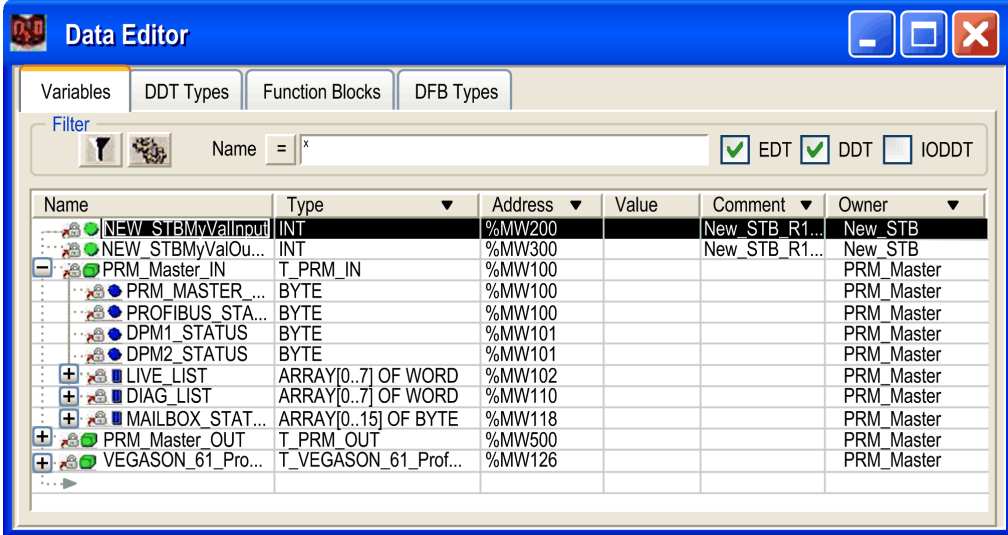
At a Glance

Variables of devices that are linked to Control Expert through **I/O Scanning** or **DTM** are *managed variables*. They are created by the device configuration tool or by the DTM and are imported into Control Expert. They are named as a concatenation of the Property box, page 161 **Device Name** + device symbol name.

Managed Variables in the Data Editor

Advantys symbols become managed variables when imported into Control Expert. An Advantys managed variable name is a concatenation of: the Advantys island name + Advantys symbol name.

This **Data Editor** illustration shows managed variables with their device name **prefixes** and their **Owner** attributes:



Managed variables follow the usual rules for Control Expert and ACS or DTM naming.

The optional **Owner** column lists the owner attribute of the managed variables. This allows you to filter the variables according to their **Device Name**.

The Control Expert managed variables are locked and cannot be modified through the **Data Editor**. You have to use the device configuration tool (ACS or the DTM) to modify these variables.

Importing Managed Variables from a Device (Advantys, DTM)

Using the **Update** button on the Property box, page 161 imports the device Symbols into the Data Editor as Control Expert managed variables.

In the case of a conflict between an device Symbol and an existing variable in the Data Editor:

- If the Control Expert variable *is not* managed, a message box allows you to replace this variable with the managed variable coming from the ACS- or DTM-controlled device).
- If the Control Expert variable *is already* managed, the update is cancelled.

For an already managed variable, there are 2 options, either:

1. Use the device configuration tool (ACS or the DTM) to rename the variable.
2. Delete the old managed variable using the tool that manages the variable, then use the tool to perform an Update.

After performing one of these options, use the **Update** button again on the device being updated to complete the import without a conflict.

Permanent Deletion of a Managed Variable

Managed variables cannot be deleted directly from the Data Editor.

Removing a managed variable from a configuration must be done from the tool (ACS or the DTM) that manages the device (either delete the device using the DTM or delete the Symbol using the ACS).

NOTE: During an **Update**, all managed variables are deleted and recreated during synchronization between Control Expert and the device.

Partial Import of a Managed Variable

Starting with Unity Pro V5.0, the managed variables become *unmanaged* during a partial import from an .XSY file. This allows deletion of the variables if the linked device is not also imported.

NOTE:

Unity Pro is the former name of Control Expert for version 13.1 or earlier.

After importing variables from an .XSY file, an **Update** is needed to resynchronize the managed variables linked to a device. During this **Update**, a conflict box appears to allow validation of the replacement managed variables.

I/O Scanner Concepts

I/O Scan List

An I/O scan list is a configuration table that identifies the targets with which repetitive communication is authorized. While the CPU is running, the Ethernet module transfers data to and from the CPU's registers in accordance with I/O scan list.

Connections

The I/O Scanner opens one connection for each entry in the I/O scanner table. If several table entries have the same IP address, multiple connections are opened.

I/O Scanner Limits

The I/O Scanner on the BMX NOE 01x0 modules are limited to:

- maximum number of devices: 64
- maximum number of input words: 2048
- maximum number of output words: 2048

Using the I/O Scanner across a Network Router

The I/O Scanner can scan devices through an IP router with a TTL (time to live) of 32.

Scanning Period

Remote input/outputs are scanned periodically depending on the application requirements. A scanning period is defined for each device through configuration, according to the update speed.

NOTE: Keep in mind:

- The lower the scanning period, the faster the input/outputs are updated. However, this speed increases the network load.
- %SW8 and %SW9 do not stop remote station scanning, but inhibit the copying of I/Os to and from the application variables.

Scanning Period

At a Glance

Remote input/outputs are scanned periodically depending on the application requirements.

A scanning period is defined for each device through configuration, according to the update speed.

NOTE: The lower the scanning period, the faster the input/outputs are updated. However, this speed increases the network load.

NOTE: %SW8 and %SW9 do not stop remote station scanning, but inhibit the copying of I/Os to and from the application memory.

NOTE: If you configure a scanning period of 0, the request is sent immediately after the response to the previous request is received.

NOTE: The entry in the **Repetitive rate step** field should be a multiple of 10. Any other number will not work correctly.

Configuration of Parameters Linked to the I/O Scanner Utility

Parameter Table

The BMX NOE 01x0 modules have configuration parameters linked to the I/O Scanner:

Parameters		BMX NOE 01x0
master %MW zones	read ref.	X
	write ref.	X
Repetitive rate (ms)		in ms
RD Master Object		automatic
RD Slave Index		X
RD length		X
Last value (input)		Hold last/Set to 0 (fallback)
WR Master Object		automatic
WR Slave Index		X
WR length		X
Health timeout		X
Legend:		
X: available		

Configuration of General Parameters for the I/O Scanner

Introduction

Configure the general parameters (**Master %MW zones**) on the I/O Scanner tab, page 145 to periodically read or write remote inputs/outputs on the Ethernet network without specific programming.

Table Entry	Health Bits	Comment
1	%IW.r.m.c.1.0	r: rack number
2	%IW.r.m.c.1.1	m: slot number located by the module
3	%IW.r.m.c.1.2	c: module channel number (always 0 for BMX NOE 01x0)
...		Example: If a BMX NOE 01x0 module is configured in rack 0, slot 3, then the health bit for table entry 2 is stored in \$IW0.3.0.1.1.
17	%IW.r.m.c.2.0	
18	%IW.r.m.c.2.1	
19	%IW.r.m.c.2.2	
...		
33	%IW.r.m.c.3.0	
34	%IW.r.m.c.3.1	
35	%IW.r.m.c.3.2	
...		
49	%IW.r.m.c.4.0	
50	%IW.r.m.c.4.1	
51	%IW.r.m.c.4.2	
...		
64	%IW.r.m.c.4.15	

I/O Scanner: Device Control Block

Device Control Block

The device control block is a block of 4 word (%QW) topological objects that enable and disable the I/O scanner for each table entry.

Each device control block bit corresponds to an entry in the I/O Scanner table. Each entry represents one logical device:

IP address	Device Name	Unit ID	Slave Syntax	Health Timeout (ms)	Repetitive rate (ms)	RD Master Object	RD Ref Slave	RD length	Last value (input)	WR Master Object	WR Ref Slave	WR length	Gateway/Bridge Device	Description
192.168.1.2		255	Index	1500	60	%MW0	0	50	Hold last	%MW200	0	30	<input type="checkbox"/>	Disable
192.168.1.3		255	Index	1500	60	%MW50	0	70	Hold last	%MW230	0	40	<input type="checkbox"/>	Enable

To disable an individual scanner device:

Step	Action
1	Create element variables with predefined IODDT type T_COM_ETH_BMX.
2	Set the bit to 1 to disable it from within the application or from an animation table.

⚠ WARNING

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

Do not create I/O Scanner entries with both read and write lengths set to 0.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

NOTE: A value of 1 in the device control block bit disables the I/O Scanner table entry. A value of 0 in the device control block bit enables the entry. Each entry corresponds to a particular logical device in the IO Scanning configuration table.

Each I/O Scanner table entry can be disabled by setting the corresponding device control bit to 1. The following table shows the mapping between the I/O Scanner table entries and the device control bits stored in %QW topological objects:

Table Entry	Device Control Bits	Comment
1	%QWr.m.c.0.0	r: rack number
2	%QWr.m.c.0.1	m: slot number located by the module
3	%QWr.m.c.0.2	c: module channel number (always 0 for the BMX NOE 01x0)
...		
17	%QWr.m.c.1.0	The device control block bits are mapped to I/O Scanner entries (%QWrack.slot.channel.word(0-3)). Example: Table entry 2 can be disabled by setting %QWr.m.0.0.1 to 1. (%QWr.m.0.0.1 is associated with DISABLE_IO_2 in the predefined IODDT type T_COM_ETH_BMX for the BMX NOE 01x0 modules.)
18	%QWr.m.c.1.1	
19	%QWr.m.c.1.2	
...		
33	%QWr.m.c.2.0	
34	%QWr.m.c.2.1	
35	%QWr.m.c.2.2	
...		
49	%QWr.m.c.3.0	
50	%QWr.m.c.3.1	
51	%QWr.m.c.3.2	
...		
64	%QWr.m.c.3.15	

NOTE: M340 devices use topological addresses to represent device control block bits. Premium and Quantum PLCs have data structures that differ from this.

Global Data Configuration Parameters

About this Section

This section introduces the configuration parameters linked to Global Data.

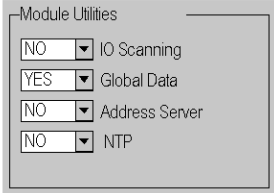
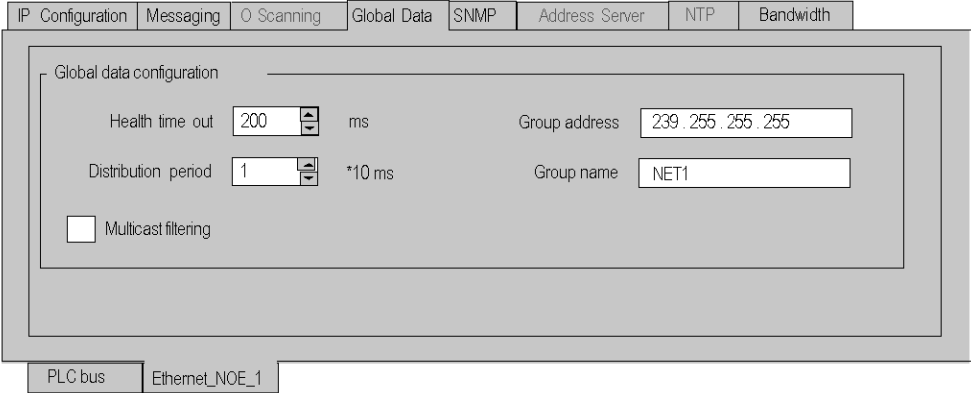
The Global Data Configuration Tab

Introduction

In order to use the BMX NOE 01x0 with global data, it is necessary to set the configuration parameters.

Global Data Tab

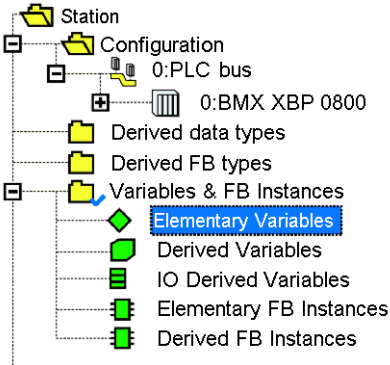
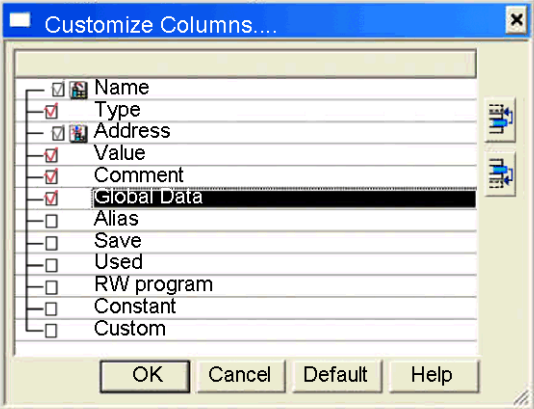
To access the configuration parameters on the global data tab:

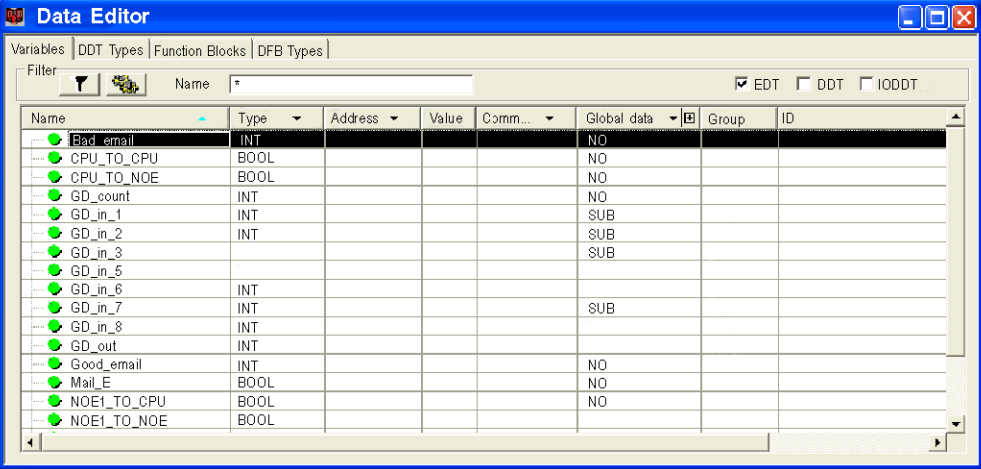
Step	Action
1	Go to the module configuration screen, page 135.
2	<p>In the Module Utilities field, select Yes in the Global Data menu.</p> 
3	<p>Select the Global Data tab.</p> 
4	In accordance with your system and application needs, select and assign the global data configuration parameters, page 178.
5	Configure the global data variables, page 177.

Configuration of Global Data Variables

Configure Variables

Before you configure Global Data variables, you must go to the Control Expert variable editor:

Step	Action	Illustration and Comments
1	<p>In the Project Browser, go to the Structural view and double-click Variables and FB Instances (see figure at right).</p> <p>Result: The Data Editor table (in step 3) appears. By default, the Global data column does not yet appear.</p>	 <p>The Project Browser shows a tree structure under 'Station'. The 'Variables & FB Instances' folder is expanded, and 'Elementary Variables' is selected and highlighted in blue. Other items in the tree include Configuration, 0:PLC bus, 0:BMX XBP 0800, Derived data types, Derived FB types, Derived Variables, IO Derived Variables, Elementary FB Instances, and Derived FB Instances.</p>
2	<p>To make the Global data column visible, right-click in the first row on the Data Editor screen, and scroll down to Customize Columns. The Customize Columns window appears (see figure at right).</p> <p>Select the Global Data check box, and press OK.</p>	 <p>The 'Customize Columns...' dialog box is shown. It has a list of checkboxes for columns: Name, Type, Address, Value, Comment, Global Data (checked and highlighted), Alias, Save, Used, RW program, Constant, and Custom. At the bottom are buttons for OK, Cancel, Default, and Help.</p>
3	<p>The Data Editor screen appears:</p>	

Step	Action	Illustration and Comments
		
4	<p>In the Global data column, there are three choices for variable configuration: NO, PUB, and SUB.</p>	<p>Definition of variable types:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • NO: neither published nor subscribed • PUB: published • SUB: subscribed
5	<p>Give the Global Data group a name in the Group field.</p>	
6	<p>Fill in the DataID field: identifier of a remote stations in a distribution group.</p>	

NOTE: IODDT data structures for M340 devices are different from the data structures for Premium and Quantum PLCs.

Configuration of General Parameters for Global Data

General Parameters

The following parameters can be set in the **Global Data configuration** zone on the Global Data configuration screen, page 176:

Parameter	Description
Health time out	<p>The Health time out zone is used to adjust the health "time-out" value. The value is from 50 to 15 000 ms in increments of 50 ms.</p> <p>An associated status bit (%IW topological objects between %IW.r.m.c.5 and %IW.r.m.c.8) is linked to each Global Data item and is used to monitor whether the data has been published and received by the end of the time indicated in this window. If yes, the value is 1, otherwise the bit is set to 0.</p>
Group address	<p>The Group address indicates the multicast IP address (class D) of the distribution group to which the station belongs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • minimum value: 224.0.0.0 • maximum value (default): 239.255.255.255
Distribution period	<p>The Distribution period zone is used to select the distribution period of the publication. The publication is time-based and is not synchronized with the PLC master task.</p> <p>The distribution value is multiplied by 10, so the available parameter range of 1 to 1500 represents distribution periods between 10 and 15 000 ms (in increments of 10).</p> <p>NOTE: With a small distribution period, it is needed to check if the switch connected to the BMX NOE module is able to manage a such amount of frames. Otherwise the switch will send back broadcast frames and the BMX NOE will go in error to cut the data flow.</p>
Group name	<p>The Group name is defined in the Control Expert data editor. The name associates a variable from the variable editor with a particular module.</p>
Multicast filtering	<p>Filtering can reduce data flow on large networks. Multicast filtering requires the use of switches that support this function (GMRP IEEE 802.1D protocol). The status of the check box indicates:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • checked: on • unchecked: off

Configuration of Parameters Linked to Global Data

Introduction

In addition to the general Global Data parameters, page 178, you must also configure the Global Data variables in the data editor.

Publish/Subscribe Variables

Association between Global Data variables (network variables) and application variables is carried out in the Control Expert variable editor.

Each application variable published or subscribed (**Global Data** field) in a Distribution Group (**Group** field) is linked to a Global Data item (network variable).

Each Global Data item has a unique identification (**Data ID**) within a Distribution Group. The rank of the status bit in the Health Bit zone of Global Data corresponds to the identifier (**Data ID**) of the Global Data.

Global Data Properties

Type	Value
max. number of publications	1
size of a variable at publication	1 to 512 words
size of a variable at subscription	1 to 512 words
max. number of subscriptions	64 (see note)
max. variable size at subscription	total of 2K words
Note: The combined total number of variables is 64. Therefore, when 1 publication variable is configured only 63 subscription variables are available.	

SNMP Configuration Parameters

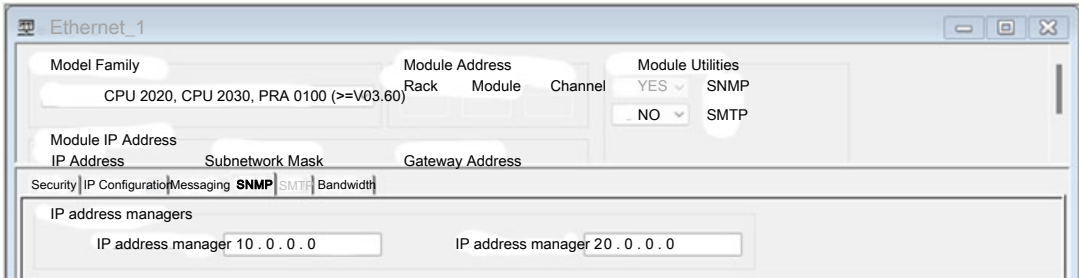
About this Section

This section introduces the configuration parameters linked to SNMP.

Configuring SNMP as an Agent

Introduction

To use the BMX NOE 01x0 or BMX P34 20x0 module as an SNMP agent, select **YES** in the **Module Utilities > SNMP** field (**YES** by default). Then, adjust the SNMP configuration parameters.

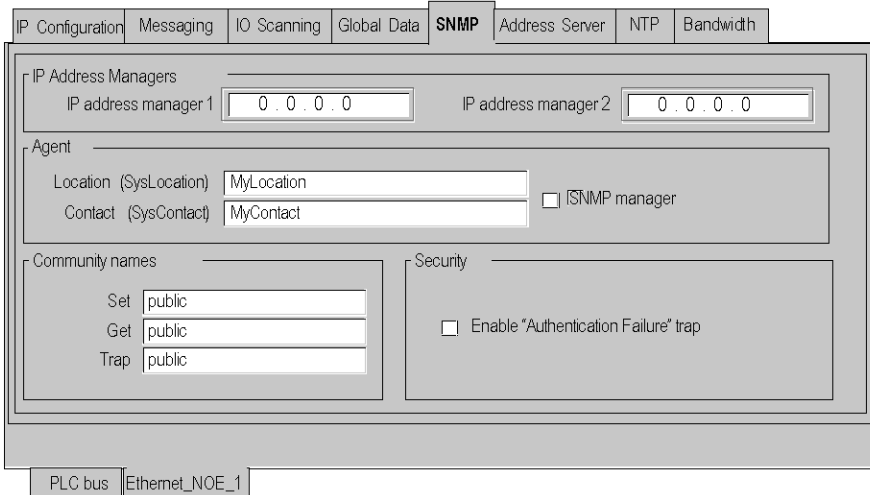


The SNMP Tab

The following table shows how to access the SNMP configuration page from the index page:

Step	Action
1	Access the module configuration screen, page 135.
2	Select the SNMP tab (see illustration below).

NOE configuration screen:



Controller configuration screen:

IP Configuration | Messaging | **SNMP** | SMTP | Bandwidth

IP Address Managers
 IP address manager 1: 0 . 0 . 0 . 0 IP address manager 2: 0 . 0 . 0 . 0

Agent
 Location (SysLocation): MyLocation ISNMP manager
 Contact (SysContact): MyContact

Community names
 Set: public
 Get: public
 Trap: public

Security
 Enable "Authentication Failure" trap

PLC bus | Ethernet_CPU

Configuring SNMP

The following table gives the configuration principle for SNMP:

Step	Action
1	Enter the IP Address Managers addresses: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IP address manager 1 • IP address manager 2
2	Fill in the Agent fields: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Location (SysLocation) • Contact (SysLocation) Or alternatively check the SNMP manager box to indicate that the information will be completed by the SNMP manager.

Step	Action
3	<p>If you want to set access rights, fill in the Community names:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set • Get • Trap <p>If you want to disable SNMP, fill in the Community names:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Public • Public • Public
<p>Note: Elsewhere in this guide are discussions of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SNMP configuration parameters, page 183 • SNMP message types, page 89 	

SNMP Configuration Parameters

Introduction

Parameters on the SNMP configuration tab, page 181 are divided into four categories:

- the IP addresses of SNMP manager devices
- SNMP agents
- the community names
- security

NOTE: Only 7-bit ASCII characters can be used in the character string entry fields.

IP Address Managers

This zone allows you to complete the IP addresses of the SNMP managers. The modules authorize a maximum of two managers.

These addresses are used during possible transmission of events (TRAP). The transmission of supervised data is detailed at the topic [SNMP](#), page 86.

Agent

This zone allows the localization and identification of an agent from the SNMP manager.

It comprises two fields:

- The **Location (SysLocation)** field: indicates the physical location of the device (32 characters maximum).
- The **Contact (SysLocation)** field: indicates the person to contact for device management and the method of contact (strings of 32 characters maximum).
- If you prefer to have this information assigned by an SNMP Manager tool for network management, select the **SNMP Manager** checkbox.

Community Name

This zone is used to define community names for the Set, Get and Trap utilities. It comprises three fields:

- The **Set** field defines the community name for the Set utility (strings of 16 characters maximum). The default value of the field is *Public*.
- The **Get** field defines the community name for the Get utility (strings of 16 characters maximum). The default value of the field is *Public*.
- The **Trap** field defines the community name for the Trap utility (strings of 16 characters maximum). The default value of the field is *Public*.

The purpose of these fields is to define the access rights for the MIB objects of the SNMP agent (local module) in relation to requests sent by the manager.

Example: If the manager sends a SetRequest request with the community name *Test* and the module has the community name *Public*, the request is not executed.

Security

The SNMP manager is able to modify the value of certain configurable parameters (Enabling "Authentication failure," Location, Contact. etc.).

▲ WARNING

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

Select the **SNMP Manager** checkbox so that the initially configured values are not restored after a cold start, warm restart, or application download.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

This zone contains the **Enable "Authentication Failure" trap** checkbox.

Selecting this checkbox allows you to validate the transmission of an authentication failure event (TRAP) from the SNMP agent to the configured manager.

In this way, the agent informs the manager that the request has been refused following an identification error (community name configured in the manager is different from the one configured in the agent).

Address Server Configuration Parameters

Address Server

Introduction

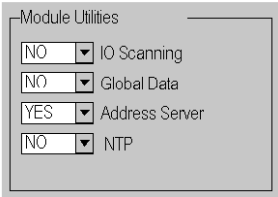
The BMX NOE 01x0 modules use the **Address Server** tab to configure the correspondence table between the MAC addresses or the Name (device name) and the IP addresses of the module if the latter is configured as a DHCP/BOOTP server.

Address management is performed in a dedicated IP address server. To avoid the task of managing each device's IP address individually, BOOTP/DHCP automatically provides devices with IP parameters. The address server employs DHCP (an extension of BOOTP), to automatically assign IP configuration parameters to devices.

This function is useful when replacing a failed remote device (for example, a faulty Momentum module).

Address Server Tab

The following procedure describes access the **Address Server** page from the index page:

Step	Action
1	Access the module configuration screen, page 135.
2	In the Module Utilities field, select Yes in the Address Server menu. 
3	Select the Address Server tab. (See illustration below.)

IP Configuration Messaging IO Scanning Global Data SNMP Address Server NTP Bandwidth

Client/Server address table

	Access	MAC address	Name	IP Address	Netmask
1	✓		Device1	192.168.10.10	255.255.0.0
2	✓	00.00.54.00.1D.E7		192.168.10.11	255.255.0.0
3	✓		Device2	192.168.10.12	255.255.0.0
4	✓	00.00.54.00.1F.ED		192.168.10.13	255.255.0.0
5	✓				
6	✓				
7	✓				
8	✓				
9	✓				
10	✓				
11	✓				
12	✓				

PLC bus Ethernet_NOE_1

Address Server Configuration

The **Address Server** tab has only one zone, the **Client/Server address table**. This table:

- lists by MAC address or name (16 ASCII characters) the remote stations that need the DHCP server to start up
- provides a correspondence between the MAC address or name and the IP address of the remote station, subnetwork mask, and gateway

To configure the address server, fill in the fields of the table for each device that requires the module as DHCP server:

- MAC Address or Name
- IP Address
- Netmask

Bandwidth Checking

About this Section

This section provides instructions for how to check the module's bandwidth allocation.

Bandwidth Checking Configuration

Introduction

The BMX NOE 01x0 communication modules and BMX P34 20x0 CPUs provide a service for checking the implemented bandwidth.

Bandwidth Tab

To access the **Bandwidth** page from the index page:

Step	Action	Comment
1	Configure the I/O scanning tab, page 145.	This step is required for the BMX NOE 01x0 modules.
2	Access the module configuration screen, page 135.	
3	Select the Bandwidth tab.	See the illustration below.
4	Select the appropriate Ethernet Environment zone for the BMX P34 20x0 CPUs.	These parameters are not available (or visible) for the BMX NOE 01x0 modules.
5	Enter the estimate for the Global Data information zone.	This is an estimate of the number of publication periods. The value entered must be the estimated average publication frequency of the distribution (local and remote) group stations.
6	Enter the estimate for the Messaging information zone.	This is an estimate of the number of transactions per second.
7	If the module overflows, the message "The maximum number of messages for the Extended Ethernet network must not exceed 2000 messages" appears.	

NOE configuration screen:

CPU configuration screen:

NOTE: An explanation of **Isolated**, **Mastered**, and **Open**, page 96 are discussed earlier in this manual.

Electronic Mail Notification Service Configuration Parameters

About this Section

This section introduces the configuration parameters linked to the electronic mail notification service, which uses SMTP.

The SMTP Tab

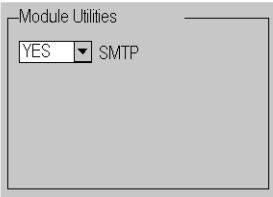
Introduction

In order to use the embedded Ethernet feature on the BMX P34 20x0 controller with SMTP, you must set the configuration parameters.

NOTE: The SMTP feature is available only on V2 modules or later.

SMTP Tab

The following procedure shows how to access the **SMTP** tab from the index page:

Step	Action
1	Access the module configuration screen.
2	In the Module Utilities field, select Yes in the SMTP menu. 
3	Select the SMTP tab. (See illustration below.)

The figure shows the SMTP dialog box for BMX P34 20x0 controllers:

SMTP Configuration

Configure the following parameters:

Parameter	Description
IP Address of SMTP	Enter a valid IP address. This parameter identifies SMTP server.
Port	Default = 25 If needed, enter a new value to match the SMTP server's port.
Password Authentication	If security is needed, select the Enable check box. Enter values for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Any printable character allowed ◦ 12-character maximum • Password <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Any printable character allowed ◦ 12-character maximum

Parameter	Description
3 Mail Headers	Each header must contain: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Sender's ID in the From field <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 32-character maximum (no spaces) 2. List of recipients in the To field <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Separate each email address with a comma. • 128-character maximum 3. Fixed part of message in the Subject field¹ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 32-character maximum
	Subject field, page 108 consists of two parts (1 024-character maximum): <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. dynamic subject 2. body

Time Synchronization Service Configuration Parameters

About this Section

This section introduces the configuration parameters linked to the time synchronization service, which uses NTP.

The NTP Tab

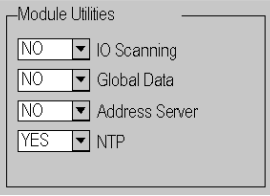
Introduction

In order to use the BMX NOE 01x0 modules with NTP, you must set the configuration parameters.

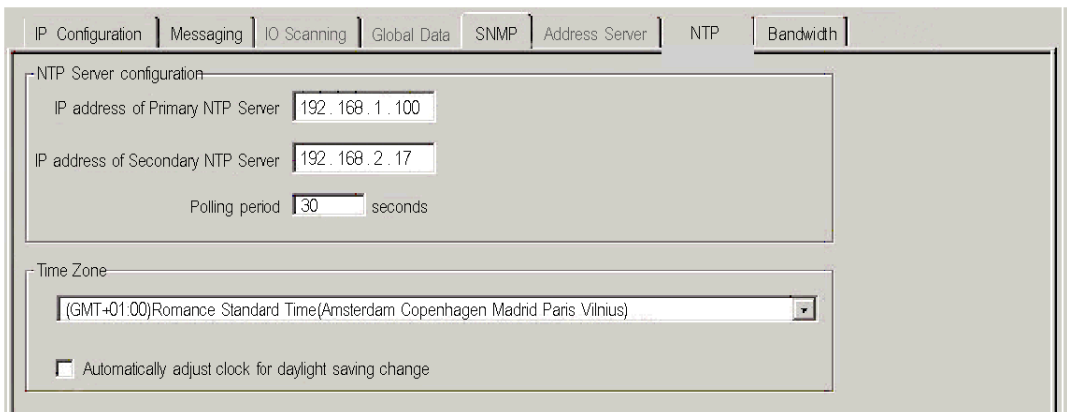
NOTE: The NTP feature is available only on V2 modules or later.

NTP Tab

The following procedure shows how to access the **NTP** tab from the index page:

Step	Action
1	Access the module configuration screen.
2	In the Module Utilities field, select Yes in the NTP menu. 
3	Select the NTP tab. (See illustration below.)

The figure shows the NTP dialog box for BMX NOE 01x0 modules:



Configuring NTP

Configure or change the following parameters on the NTP configuration page:

- IP address of Primary NTP Server**
 - Enter a valid IP address.
- IP address of Secondary NTP Server**
 - Enter a valid IP address.

3. **Polling period (in seconds)** (the time between time updates from the NTP server)

Enter a value:

- min = 1 sec
- max = 120 sec
- default = 5 sec

4. **Time Zone** (see the following table for available times zones)

- Select from drop-down menu.
Universal Time, Coordinated (GMT) = default
- Custom time zone

5. **Automatically adjust clock for daylight saving change**

- Parameter is selected by default (check mark appears) if daylight saving time is chosen.

Time Zones Available

Select a time zone the from drop-down menu.

Time Zone	Description	DST Available
Custom		Yes
(GMT-12:00)	Dateline Standard Time [Eniwetok Kwajalein]	No
(GMT-11:00)	Samoa Standard Time [Midway Is Samoa]	No
(GMT-10:00)	Hawaiian Standard Time [Hawaii Honolulu]	No
(GMT-09:00)	Alaskan Standard Time [Anchorage]	Yes
(GMT-08:00)	Pacific Standard Time [Los Angeles Tijuana]	Yes
(GMT-07:00)	Mexican Standard Time [Chihuahua La Paz Mazatlan]	Yes
(GMT-07:00)	Mountain Standard Time [Arizona Phoenix]	No
(GMT-07:00)	Mountain Standard Time [Denver]	Yes
(GMT-06:00)	Central Standard Time [Chicago]	Yes
(GMT-06:00)	Mexico Standard Time [Tegucigalpa]	No
(GMT-06:00)	Canada Central Standard Time [Saskatchewan Regina]	No
(GMT-06:00)	Central America Standard Time [Mexico_city]	Yes
(GMT-05:00)	SA Pacific Standard Time [Bogota Lima Quito]	No

Time Zone	Description	DST Available
(GMT-05:00)	Eastern Standard Time [New York]	Yes
(GMT-05:00)	Eastern Standard Time [Indiana (East)] [Indianapolis]	No
(GMT-04:00)	SA Western Standard Time [Caracas La Paz]	No
(GMT-04:00)	Pacific SA Standard Time [Santiago]	Yes
(GMT-03:30)	Newfoundland Standard Time [Newfoundland St Johns]	Yes
(GMT-03:00)	E. South America Standard Time [Brasilia Sao_Paulo]	Yes
(GMT-03:00)	SA Eastern Standard Time [Buenos Aires Georgetown]	No
(GMT-02:00)	Mid-Atlantic Standard Time [South_Georgia]	No
(GMT-01:00)	Azores Standard Time [Azores Cape Verde Island]	Yes
(GMT)	Universal Coordinated Time [Casablanca, Monrovia]	No
(GMT0)	Greenwich Mean Time [Dublin Edinburgh Lisbon London]	Yes
(GMT+01:00)	Romance Standard Time [Amsterdam CopenHagen Madrid Paris Vilnius]	Yes
(GMT+01:00)	Central European Standard Time [Belgrade Sarajevo Skopje Sofija Zagreb]	Yes
(GMT+01:00)	Central Europe Standard Time [Bratislava Budapest Ljubljana Prague Warsaw]	Yes
(GMT+01:00)	W. Europe Standard Time [Brussels Berlin Bern Rome Stockholm Vienna]	Yes
(GMT+02:00)	GTB Standard Time [Athens Istanbul Minsk]	Yes
(GMT+02:00)	E. Europe Standard Time [Bucharest]	Yes
(GMT+02:00)	Egypt Standard Time [Cairo]	Yes
(GMT+02:00)	South Africa Standard Time [Johannesburg Harare Pretoria]	No
(GMT+02:00)	FLE Standard Time [Helsinki Riga Tallinn]	Yes
(GMT+02:00)	Israel Standard Time [Israel Jerusalem]	Yes
(GMT+03:00)	Arabic Standard Time [Baghdad]	Yes
(GMT+03:00)	Arab Standard Time [Kuwait Riyadh]	No
(GMT+03:00)	Russian Standard Time [Moscow St. Petersburg Volgograd]	Yes
(GMT+03:00)	E. Africa Standard Time [Nairobi]	No
(GMT+03:30)	Iran Standard Time [Tehran]	Yes
(GMT+04:00)	Arabian Standard Time [Abu Dhabi Muscat]	No
(GMT+04:00)	Caucasus Standard Time [Baku Tbilisi]	Yes

Time Zone	Description	DST Available
(GMT+04:00)	Afghanistan Standard Time [Kabul]	No
(GMT+05:00)	Ekaterinburg Standard Time [Ekaterinburg]	Yes
(GMT+05:00)	West Asia Standard Time [Islamabad Karachi Tashkent]	No
(GMT+05:30)	India Standard Time [Bombay Calcutta Madras New Delhi]	No
(GMT+06:00)	Central Asia Standard Time [Almaty Dhaka]	Yes
(GMT+06:00)	Sri Lanka Standard Time [Columbo]	No
(GMT+07:00)	SE Asia Standard Time [Bangkok Hanoi Jakarta]	No
(GMT+08:00)	China Standard Time [Beijing Chongqing Hong Kong Urumqi]	No
(GMT+08:00)	W. Australia Standard Time [Perth]	No
(GMT+08:00)	Singapore Standard Time [Singapore]	No
(GMT+08:00)	Taipei Standard Time [Taipei]	No
(GMT+09:00)	Tokyo Standard Time [Osako Sapporo Tokyo]	No
(GMT+09:00)	Korea Standard Time [Seoul]	No
(GMT+09:00)	Yakutsk Standard Time [Yakutsk]	Yes
(GMT+09:30)	Cen. Australia Standard Time [Adelaide]	Yes
(GMT+09:30)	AUS Central Standard Time [Darwin]	No
(GMT+10:00)	E. Australia Standard Time [Brisbane]	No
(GMT+10:00)	AUS Eastern Standard Time [Canberra Melbourne Sydney]	Yes
(GMT+10:00)	West Pacific Standard Time [Guam Port Moresby]	No
(GMT+10:00)	Tasmania Standard Time [Hobart]	Yes
(GMT+10:00)	Vladivostok Standard Time [Vladivostok]	Yes
(GMT+11:00)	Central Pacific Standard Time [Magadan Solomon Is New Caledonia]	Yes
(GMT+12:00)	New Zealand Standard Time [Auckland Wellington]	Yes
(GMT+12:00)	Fiji Standard Time [Fiji Kamchatka Marshall Is]	No

Important Information about the Time Service

NOTE: Without an SD card in an NOE module, time zones will not function correctly when changing from daylight saving time.

Customizing Time Zone Parameters

If you want a time zone not listed in the time zone table:

Step	Action	Comment
1	Write the text rules for the custom time zone.	If you want more information, the syntax to write those rules along with a few examples are found in the module in: /FLASH0/wwwroot/conf/NTP/instructions.txt
2	Using an FTP client, store your rules in the file: /FLASH0/wwwroot/conf/NTP/customrules user ID: ntpupdate password: ntpupdate	Root directory to store 'customrules' is set by the FTP server as /FLASH0/wwwroot/conf/NTP
3	When the rules are written, choose the drop down menu on the NTP configuration screen, and configure (or reboot) the module by selecting: Time Zone = Custom	The NTP component looks for customrules, calls the tz compiler, and generates a new file called 'tz_custom'. This file is binary file and should not be edited. If the tz compiler detects a syntax error in customrules, the syntax error is logged in the file: /FLASH0/wwwroot/conf/NTP/error.log 1. NTP component is not launched. 2. NTP Status field in the diagnostic screen displays NOT OK .

Configuring an Ethernet Network

What's in This Chapter

Configuration Methodology for an Ethernet Network 197
 Adding the Module to an Ethernet Network 200

About this Chapter

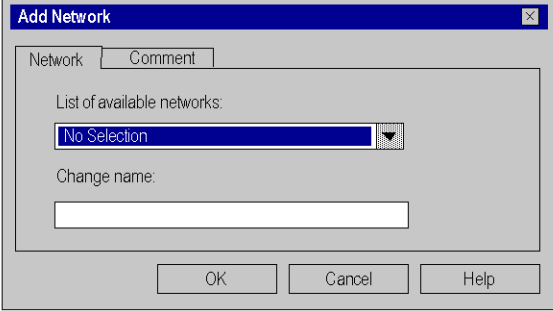
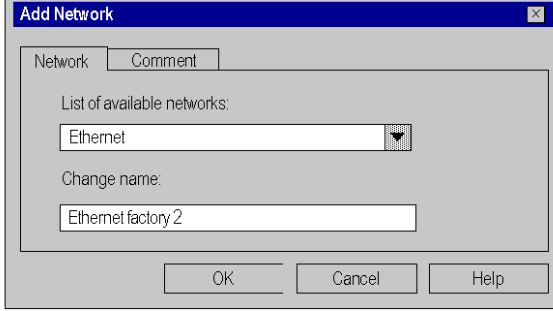
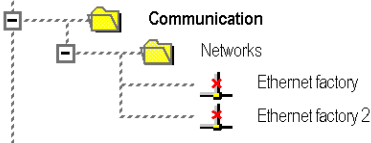
This chapter describes the creation and configuration of an Ethernet network for BMX P34 20x0 CPUs through these major stages:

Stage	Description	Comment
1	creation of an Ethernet logic network	run from the project browser
2	configuration of an Ethernet logic network	
3	choose a logical network family	
3	declaration of the module	run from the hardware configuration editor
4	association of the module with the logic network	
Note: The benefit of this method is that from the second stage onwards, you can design your communication application and use the simulator to test its operation. (You do not have to have the hardware to start working.)		

Configuration Methodology for an Ethernet Network

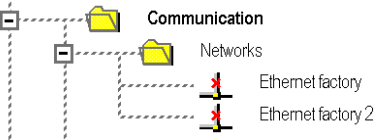
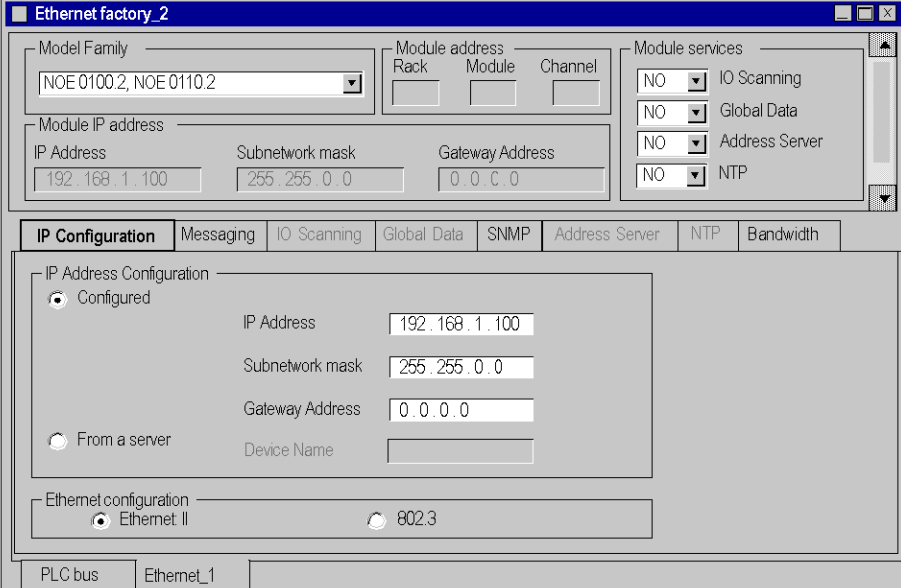
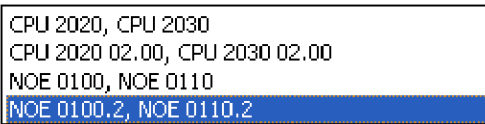
Creating a Network

To create a logical Ethernet network:

Step	Action
1	<p>In the Project Browser, right-click the Network subdirectory in the Communication directory and select the New Network option. The Add Network screen appears:</p> 
2	<p>Choose Ethernet in the List of available networks and choose a meaningful name for your selection:</p>  <p>Note: If desired, a comment may be added by clicking on the Comment tab.</p>
3	<p>Click OK, and a new logic network is created. The new Ethernet network appears in the project browser:</p>  <p>Note: As you can see, a small icon indicates that the logical network is not associated with a PLC device.</p>

Accessing Network Configuration

To access the logical Ethernet network configuration:

Step	Action
1	<p>Open the project browser in order to see the logic networks of your application:</p> 
2	<p>Right-click the Ethernet logic network to be configured and select Open. The Ethernet configuration screen is displayed.</p> 
3	<p>Scroll to choose the Model Family of your network:</p> 

Adding the Module to an Ethernet Network

Declare the Module

To declare an Ethernet module:

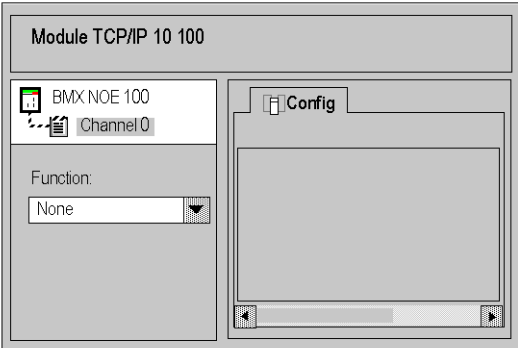
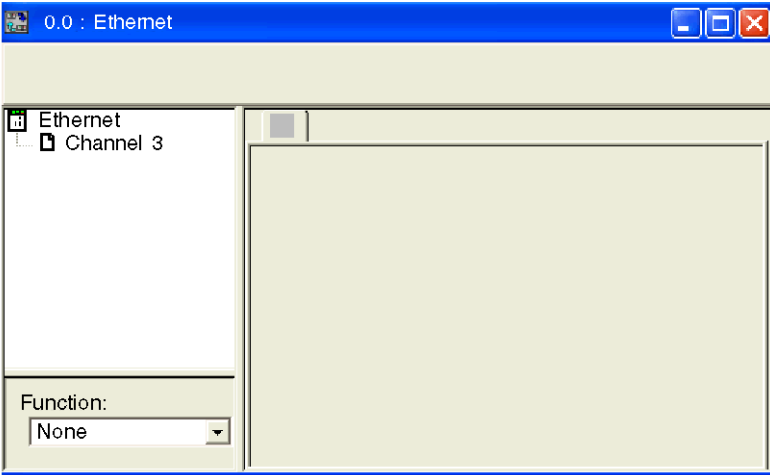
Step	Action	Result
1	Open the hardware configuration editor.	
2	Double-click the empty slot in which you wish to place the module.	The New Device window appears.
3	Expand (+) the Communication family.	
4	Left-click to select the desired Ethernet module from the list of Communication family modules.	
5	Press OK .	The module appears in the rack (see note).
<p>Note: In the case of Ethernet solutions integrated in the controllers, the Ethernet communication channel is automatically declared when a controller is chosen:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • BMX NOE 01x0 modules: Channel 0 • BMX P34 20x0 Ethernet port: Channel 3 		

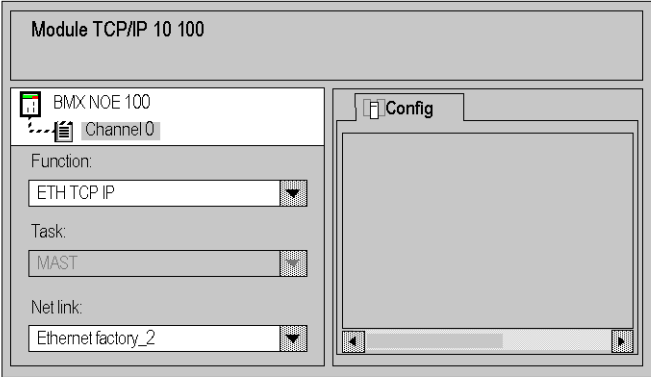
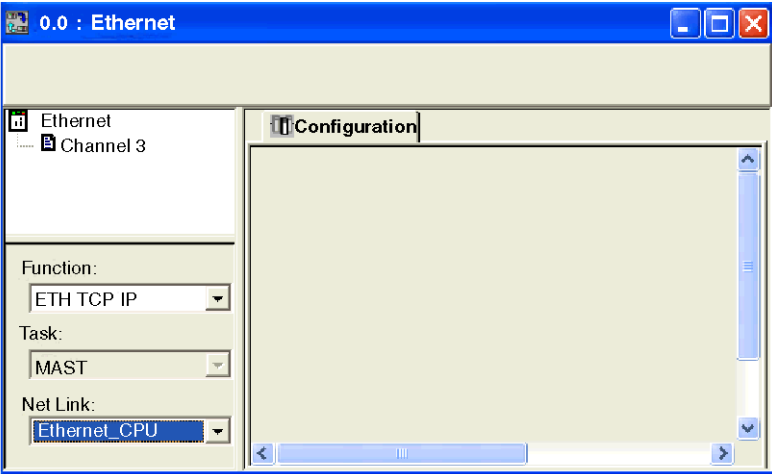
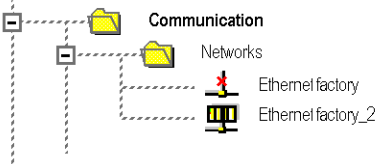
NOTE: You can also use the drag and drop method to add a module, page 232 to an Ethernet network.

Associate the Module with the Network

To associate the logical Ethernet network with the module you have just declared:

Step	Action
1	Open the hardware configuration editor.
2	Double-click the module.

Step	Action
	<p>NOE:</p>  <p>CPU:</p> 
3	<p>In the Function menu, scroll to a network to associate with the module. Then, in the Net link menu, scroll to the logic network you wish to associate with the Ethernet channel of the module.</p>

Step	Action
	<p>NOE:</p>  <p>CPU:</p> 
<p>4</p>	<p>Confirm your choice and close the window. The Ethernet factory_2 logic network is associated with the Ethernet BMX NOE 0100 module. The module address is written in the logic network's configuration window. The icon associated with this logic network changes and indicates the links with a PLC.</p> 

Debugging with Control Expert

What's in This Chapter

Module Debugging Screen	203
General Debugging Parameters	206
Debugging Parameters for TCP/IP Utilities.....	210
Debugging Parameters for I/O Scanning.....	210
Debugging Parameters for Global Data	211

About this Chapter

This chapter describes procedures for debugging the configuration of the BMXNOE01•0 modules with Control Expert.

Module Debugging Screen

The Screen

This four-zone Control Expert **Debug** tab provides options to debug an Ethernet port.

NOE screen:

Ethernet 1 Port 10/100 RJ45 Version: 1.0 Run Err. STS

1

BMX NOE 0100 Channel 0 **2**

Config Debug Fault **4**

Address information

Form a server	MAC Address	00:00:54:00:1D:B7
	IP Address	192.168.1.100
	Subnetwork mask	255.255.0.0
	Gateway Address	0.0.0.0

Messages

Open connections

Non-authorized

Messages refused

Messages received

Messages sent

Message traffic (msg./min)

2000 msg/sec

Min. Avg. Max.

3

Function: ETH TCP/IP

Task: MAST

Network link: noe

NTP

NTP status Link to the NTP Server Primary

DST status Daylight Saving Time NTP server IP address 192.168.16.10

Time zone (GMT-05:00)Eastern Standard Time(New York)

Requests 12 Responses 11 Errors 16#1 Last error 16#0

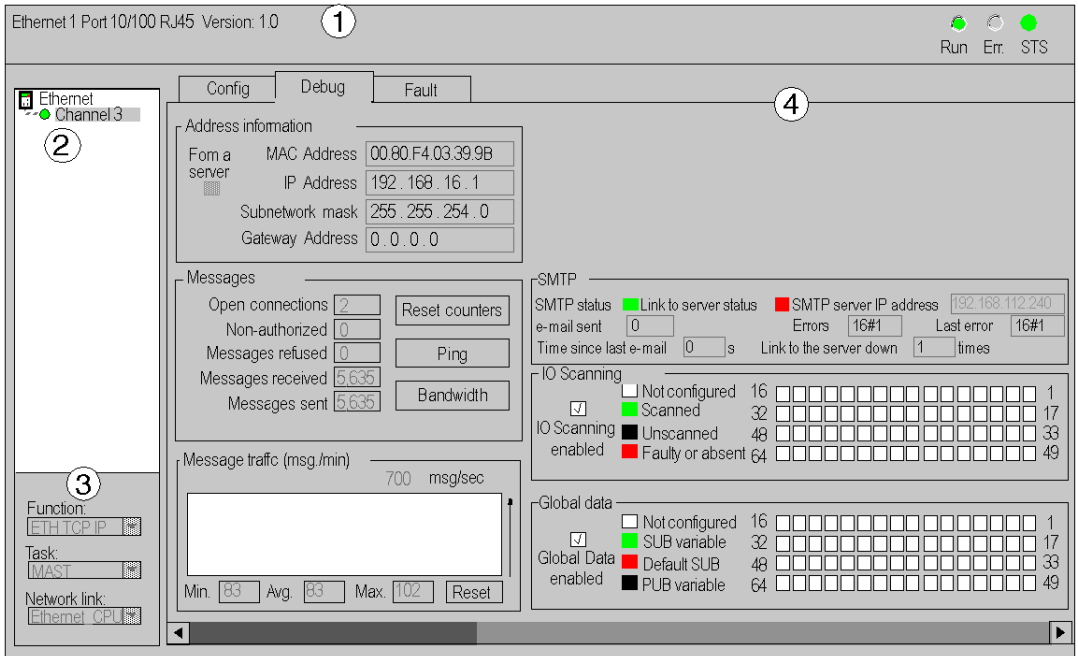
IO Scanning

<input type="checkbox"/> Not configured	16	<input type="checkbox"/>	1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Scanned	32	<input type="checkbox"/>	17
<input type="checkbox"/> Unscanned	48	<input type="checkbox"/>	33
<input type="checkbox"/> Faulty or absent	64	<input type="checkbox"/>	49

Global data

<input type="checkbox"/> Not configured	16	<input type="checkbox"/>	1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SUB variable	32	<input type="checkbox"/>	17
<input type="checkbox"/> Default SUB	48	<input type="checkbox"/>	33
<input type="checkbox"/> PUB variable	64	<input type="checkbox"/>	49

CPU screen:



This table describes the zones in the configuration screen:

Zone	Function		
1: Module	module description zone (For details refer to LED Indicators, page 28.)	Run	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> on: module is operating off: PLC not configured
		Err.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> on: configuration or system error off: operation is normal (no error)
		STS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> on: communication is OK flashing: communication error
2: Channel	channel selection zone		
3: Parameters	general parameters zone		
4: Debug tab	Address information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> displays TCP/IP utility configuration tests communication of the TCP/IP profile 	
	Messages	displays the number of open connections and the number of messages that are unauthorized, refused, received, and sent.	
	Message traffic	displays the number of messages processed by the module per minute	

Zone	Function	
	IO Scanning	displays the status for each remote input/output module
	Global Data	displays the status of global data variables
	NTP	displays the status of the NTP server (NOE modules only)
	SMTP	displays the status of the SMTP server (CPU modules only)

General Debugging Parameters

Introduction

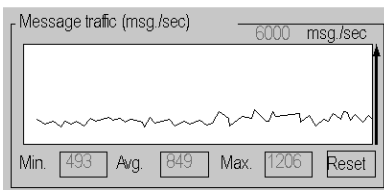
Double-click the module to open the debug tab, page 244.

The general debugging parameters on the module debugging screen, page 203 are grouped into two windows:

- the **Message traffic** window
- the **Messages** window

Message Traffic

The **Message traffic** window looks like this:

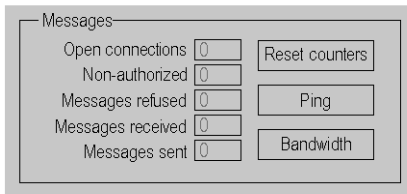


It graphically shows the number of Ethernet packets per second handled by the module (sent and received).

The **Reset** button resets the **Min.**, **Av.**, and **Max** counters to 0.

Messages

The **Messages** window looks like this:



This window reports the number of:

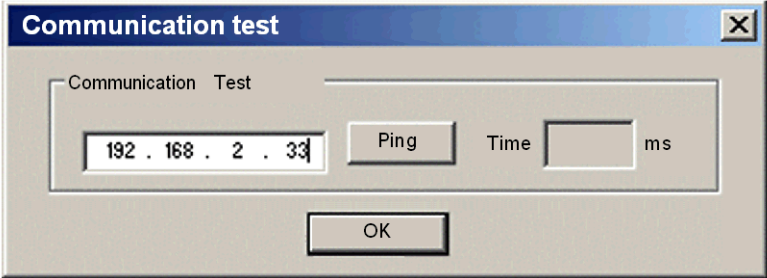
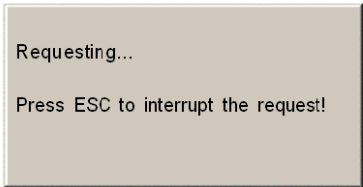

- open TCP/IP connections (the combined number of server, client, and Transparent Device Access connections that are open)
- non-authorized TCP/IP connections
- refused TCP/IP messages
- received TCP/IP messages
- sent TCP/IP messages

This window includes three buttons:

- **Reset counters:** Press this button to reset the counters to 0.
- **Ping** (see below)
- **Bandwidth** (see below)

Ping

You can test the routing between your module and another device through a PING request:

Step	Action	Comment
1	Enter the IP address of the device for which you want to test communications and press Ping.	
2	Wait for the request to be processed	This window appears: 
3	The COMMUNICATION window informs you that the exchange was successful.	The COMMUNICATION window: 
4	Press OK .	With the successful PING request, a value appears in the ms field.

Bandwidth

Press the **Bandwidth** button to see the number of messages received per second in the **Bandwidth** window. Available bandwidth and network load are reported in terms of dynamic bandwidth monitoring, page 97.

The screenshot shows a window titled "Bandwidth" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The window is divided into two main sections: "Ethernet traffic monitoring (messages per second)" and "Bandwidth monitoring".

Ethernet traffic monitoring (messages per second)

	Current	Max
total	112	116
broadcast	0	1
multicast	77	80
unicast	35	39
useless	0	2
dropped	0	0

A "Reset" button is located to the right of the Max column.

Bandwidth monitoring

A horizontal bar chart shows a very small amount of bandwidth usage. Below the chart, several categories are listed with their respective message counts:

- IO scanning: 33
- Subscribed Global data: 0
- Non subscribed global data: 77
- Messaging: 0
- Others: 2

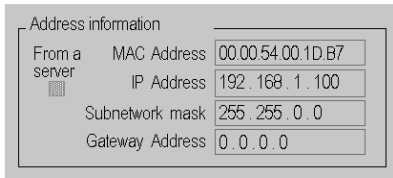
An "OK" button is located at the bottom center of the window.

NOTE: Press **Reset** to clear the **Max** column fields.

Debugging Parameters for TCP/IP Utilities

Address Information

The debugging parameters for TCP/IP utilities on the module debugging screen, page 203 are grouped together in the **Address information** window:



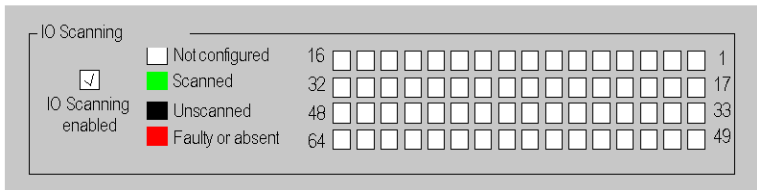
This window displays the configuration of:

- MAC Address
- IP Address
- Subnetwork mask
- Gateway Address

Debugging Parameters for I/O Scanning

IO Scanning Dialog

When the I/O Scanner is activated, the status of each configured device is displayed on the module debugging screen, page 203:



A device referenced in the I/O Scanning configuration tab can have the following states:

- **Not configured** (white)
- **Scanned** (green)

- **Unscanned** (black): caused by the I/O Scanner not being activated (nothing selected in configuration)
- **Faulty or Absent** (red)

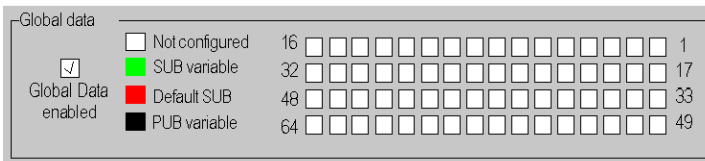
NOTE: In the cases of **Not configured** or **Unscanned**, no Modbus request is sent to the device.

NOTE: This is the same information as seen in the IODDT, page 212 for the module.

Debugging Parameters for Global Data

Global Data Dialog

When Global Data is activated, the status of a Global Data variable is displayed on the module debugging screen, page 203:



A Global Data variable can have the following status:

- **Not configured** (white)
- **SUB variable** (green): subscribed variable received in the health timeout limit
- **Default SUB** (red): subscribed variable not received in the health time out limit
- **PUB variable** (black): published variable

Ethernet Language Objects

What's in This Chapter

Language Objects and IODDTs of Ethernet Communication	212
Exchange Objects of Type T_COM_ETH_BMX.....	219
Language Objects Associated with BMX NOE 01x0 and BMX P34 20x0 CPU Configuration	223
Language Objects and Generic IODDT Applicable to Communication Protocols.....	229

About this Chapter

This chapter describes the language objects associated with the Ethernet communication modules.

There is also a discussion of IODDTs. The IODDT (Input/Output Derived Data Type) is a data type associated with a PLC channel or module. Expert modules are associated with specific IODDTs.

Language Objects and IODDTs of Ethernet Communication

About this Section

This section provides a general overview of language objects and IODDTs of Ethernet communication.

Language Objects and IODDTs of Ethernet Communication

General

Ethernet communication has the following IODDT:

- T_COM_ETH_BMX: specific to modules with Ethernet communication

IODDTs are predefined by the manufacturer and contain input/output language objects belonging to the channel of an application-specific module.

NOTE: IODDT variables can be created with:

- the I/O objects tab
- the Data Editor

Types of Language Objects

Each IODDT has a set of language objects that is used to control and check the operation of the IODDT. There are two types of language objects:

- **implicit:** Implicit exchange objects are exchanged automatically on each cycle turn of the task associated with the module. These exchanges concern the states of modules, communication signals, slaves, etc.
- **explicit:** Explicit exchange objects are exchanged at the request of the application, using explicit exchange instructions. These exchanges set parameters and diagnose the module.

Elsewhere in this guide are detailed descriptions for the IODDT types, page 223.

Details of T_COM_EIP IODDT

Exchange Objects of the IODDT

The T_COM_EIP IODDT supports both implicit and explicit exchange objects:

- Implicit exchange objects are automatically exchanged at each cycle of a task associated with the channel.
- Explicit exchange objects can be reached via explicit messaging controlled either by program logic, or by operator commands.

Exchange objects are %I, %IW, %M and %MW.

The tables below presents the various implicit and explicit exchange objects of IODDT T_COM_EIP, as supported by the BMX NOC 0401 communication module.

The parameters *r*, *m*, and *c* shown in the following-tables represent the topological addressing of the module. Each parameter has the following signification:

- **r** represents the rack (or station) number
- **m** represents the module (or slot) number
- **c** represents the channel number

Implicit and Explicit Exchange Objects of the T_COM_EIP IODDT

The T_COM_EIP IODDT presents the following implicit communication objects:

Standard symbol	Type	Access	Description	Address
CH_ERROR	BOOL	R	Channel detected error bit	%I.r.m.c.ERR
STS_ETH_SERVICES	INT	R	Status of Ethernet services:	%IW.r.m.c.0
			Bit 0: EIP Scanner (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	
			Bit 1: EIP Adapter (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	
			Bit 2: EIP Client (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	
			Bit 3: EIP Server (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	
			Bit 4: Modbus scanner (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	
			Bit 5: Modbus TCP Client (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	
			Bit 6: Modbus TCP Server (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	
			Bit 7: FDR Server (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	
			Bit 8: RSTP (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	
Bit 9–Bit 15: (Reserved)				

Explicit Exchange Objects of the T_COM_EIP IODDT

The T_COM_EIP IODDT presents the following explicit communication objects:

Standard symbol	Type	Access	Description	Address
EXCH_STS	INT	R	Exchange Status:	%MWr.m.c.0
STS_IN_PROGR	BOOL	R	Bit 0: Status parameter read in progress	%MWr.m.c.0.0
CMD_IN_PROGR	BOOL	R	Bit 1: Command parameter write in progress	%MWr.m.c.0.1
ADJ_IN_PROGR	BOOL	R	Bit 2: (Reserved)	%MWr.m.c.0.2
EXCH_RPT	INT	R	Channel report	%MWr.m.c.1
STS_ERR	BOOL	R	Bit 0: Error detected while reading channel status	%MWr.m.c.1.0
CMD_ERR	BOOL	R	Bit 1: Error detected while sending a command on the channel	%MWr.m.c.1.1
ADJ_ERR	BOOL	R	Bit 2: (Reserved)	%MWr.m.c.1.2
CH_FLT	INT	R	Channel faults detected	%MWr.m.c.2

Standard symbol	Type	Access	Description	Address
NO_DEVICE	BOOL	R	Bit 0: (Reserved)	%MWr.m.c.2.0
ONE_DEVICE_FLT	BOOL	R	Bit 1: (Reserved)	%MWr.m.c.2.1
BLK	BOOL	R	Bit 2: (Reserved)	%MWr.m.c.2.2
TO_ERR	BOOL	R	Bit 3: (Reserved)	%MWr.m.c.2.3
INTERNAL_FLT	BOOL	R	Bit 4: Internal error detected: channel inoperative	%MWr.m.c.2.4
CONF_FLT	BOOL	R	Bit 5: (Reserved)	%MWr.m.c.2.5
COM_FLT	BOOL	R	Bit 6: X-bus communication error detected	%MWr.m.c.2.6
APPLI_FLT	BOOL	R	Bit 7: Application configuration error detected	%MWr.m.c.2.7
ETH_GLOBAL_STS	INT	R	Ethernet global status	%MWr.m.c.3
	BOOL	R	Bit 0: detected configuration error	
	BOOL	R	Bit 1: (Reserved)	
	BOOL	R	Bit 2: duplicate IP address detected	
	BOOL	R	Bit 3: Configuration mismatch	
	BOOL	R	Bit 4: All 4 external Ethernet ports are disconnected	
	BOOL	R	Bit 5: The module is in the process of obtaining an IP address (BOOTP or in duplicate IP address)	
IP_ADDR	DINT	R	IP address	%MWr.m.c.4

Implicit Exchange Language Objects Associated with the Application-Specific Function

At a Glance

An integrated application-specific interface or the addition of a module automatically enhances the language objects application used to program this interface or module.

These objects correspond to the input/output images and software data of the module or integrated application-specific interface.

Reminders

The module inputs (%I and %IW) are updated in the PLC memory at the start of the task, the PLC being in RUN or STOP mode.

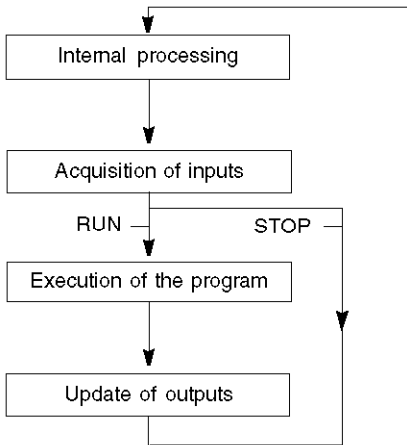
The outputs (%Q and %QW) are updated at the end of the task, only when the PLC is in RUN mode.

NOTE: When the task occurs in STOP mode, either of the following are possible, depending on the configuration selected:

- outputs are set to fallback position (fallback mode)
- outputs are maintained at their last value (maintain mode)

Figure

The following diagram shows the operating cycle of a PLC task (cyclical execution).



Explicit Exchange Language Objects Associated with the Application-Specific Function

Introduction

Explicit exchanges are performed at the user program's request using these instructions:

- READ_STS (read status words)
- WRITE_CMD (write command words)

- WRITE_PARAM (write adjustment parameters)
- READ_PARAM (read adjustment parameters)
- SAVE_PARAM (save adjustment parameters)
- RESTORE_PARAM (restore adjustment parameters)

For more details about instructions, refer to *EcoStruxure™ Control Expert, I/O Management, Block Library*.

These exchanges apply to a set of %MW objects of the same type (status, commands or parameters) that belong to a channel.

These objects can:

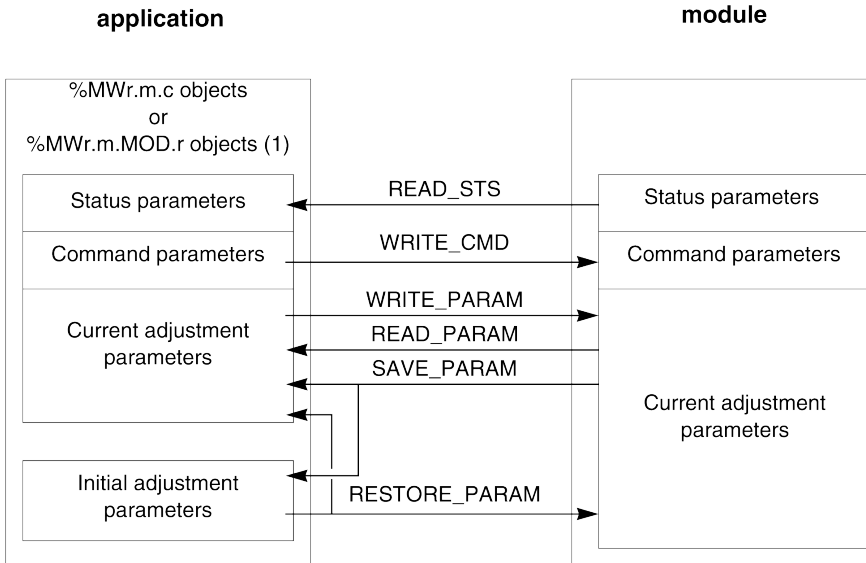
- provide information about the module (for example, type of error detected in a channel)
- have command control of the module (for example, switch command)
- define the module's operating modes (save and restore adjustment parameters in the process of application)

NOTE: To avoid several simultaneous explicit exchanges for the same channel, it is necessary to test the value of the word EXCH_STS (%MW_{r.m.c.0}) of the IODDT associated to the channel before calling any EF addressing this channel.

NOTE: Explicit exchanges are not supported when X80 analog and digital I/O modules are configured through an eX80 adapter module (BMECRA31210) in a Quantum EIO configuration. You cannot set up a module's parameters from the PLC application during operation.

General Principle for Using Explicit Instructions

The diagram below shows the different types of explicit exchanges that can be made between the application and module.



(1) Only with READ_STS and WRITE_CMD instructions.

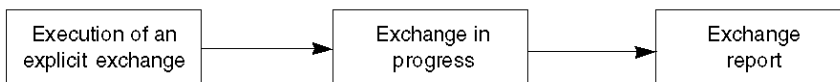
Managing Exchanges

During an explicit exchange, check performance to see that the data is only taken into account when the exchange has been correctly executed.

To do this, two types of information is available:

- information concerning the exchange in progress
- the exchange report

The following diagram describes the management principle for an exchange.



NOTE: In order to avoid several simultaneous explicit exchanges for the same channel, it is necessary to test the value of the word EXCH_STS (%MWr.m.c.0) of the IODDT associated to the channel before calling any EF addressing this channel.

Exchange Objects of Type T_COM_ETH_BMX

About this Section

The section describes the implicit and explicit exchange objects of type T_COM_ETH_BMX.

Details of Implicit Exchange Objects of the IODDT Type T_COM_ETH_BMX

Objects

The IODDT of type T_COM_ETH_BMX has implicit exchange objects, which are described below. This type of IODDT applies to the BMX P34 20x0 and BMX NOE 01x0 modules.

Standard Symbol		Type	Access	Meaning	Address
CH_ERROR		BOOL	R	line error bit	%I.r.m.c.ERR
SERVICES_STG		INT	R	status of the different services	%IW.r.m.c.0
	P502_STATUS_BIT	BOOL	R	Port 502 messaging service status (0=OK, 1=NOK)	%IW.r.m.c.0.0
	IOS_STATUS_BIT	BOOL	R	IO Scanner service status (0=OK, 1=NOK)	%IW.r.m.c.0.1
	GLBD_STATUS_BIT	BOOL	R	Global Data service status (0=OK, 1=NOK)	%IW.r.m.c.0.2
	EMAIL_STATUS_BIT	BOOL	R	e-mail service status (0=OK, 1=NOK)	%IW.r.m.c.0.3
	FDRS_STATUS_BIT	BOOL	R	FDR server service status (0=OK, 1=NOK)	%IW.r.m.c.0.4
	NTPC_STATUS_BIT	BOOL	R	NTP Client service status (0=OK, 1=NOK)	%IW.r.m.c.0.5
	TCOPEN_STATUS_BIT	BOOL	R	Reserved for L2 (for future use)	%IW.r.m.c.0.6
REFRESH_IO_1 to REFRESH_IO_16		BOOL	R	indicates that the inputs/outputs of the I/O Scanner from stations 1 to 16 are refreshed	%IW.r.m.c.1.0 to %IW.r.m.c.1.15
REFRESH_IO_17 to REFRESH_IO_32		BOOL	R	indicates that the inputs/outputs of the I/O Scanner from stations 17 to 32 are refreshed	%IW.r.m.c.2.0 to %IW.r.m.c.2.15

Standard Symbol	Type	Access	Meaning	Address
REFRESH_IO_33 to REFRESH_IO_48	BOOL	R	indicates that the inputs/outputs of the I/O Scanner from stations 33 to 48 are refreshed	%IWm.c.3.0 to %IWm.c.3.15
REFRESH_IO_49 to REFRESH_IO_64	BOOL	R	indicates that the inputs/outputs of the I/O Scanner from stations 49 to 64 are refreshed	%IWm.c.4.0 to %IWm.c.4.15
VALID_GD_1 to VALID_GD_16	BOOL	R	indicates that Global Data from stations 1 to 16 are refreshed	%IWm.c.5.0 to %IWm.c.5.15
VALID_GD_17 to VALID_GD_32	BOOL	R	indicates that Global Data from stations 17 to 32 are refreshed	%IWm.c.6.0 to %IWm.c.6.15
VALID_GD_33 to VALID_GD_48	BOOL	R	indicates that Global Data from stations 33 to 48 are refreshed	%IWm.c.7.0 to %IWm.c.7.15
VALID_GD_49 to VALID_GD_64	BOOL	R	indicates that Global Data from stations 49 to 64 are refreshed	%IWm.c.8.0 to %IWm.c.8.15
DISABLE_IO_1 to DISABLE_IO_16	BOOL	R/W	enables/disables the refreshing of inputs/outputs of the I/O Scanner for stations 1 to 16	%QWm.c.0.0 to %QWm.c.0.15
DISABLE_IO_17 to DISABLE_IO_32	BOOL	R/W	enables/disables the refreshing of inputs/outputs of the I/O Scanner for stations 17 to 32	%QWm.c.1.0 to %QWm.c.1.15
DISABLE_IO_33 to DISABLE_IO_48	BOOL	R/W	enables/disables the refreshing of inputs/outputs of the I/O Scanner for stations 33 to 48	%QWm.c.2.0 to %QWm.c.2.15
DISABLE_IO_49 to DISABLE_IO_64	BOOL	R/W	enables/disables the refreshing of inputs/outputs of the I/O Scanner for stations 49 to 64	%QWm.c.3.0 to %QWm.c.3.15
R = read only R/W = read/write				

Details of Explicit Exchange Objects of the IODDT Type T_COM_ETH_BMX

System Words

The table below shows the meaning of the system word bits:

Standard Symbol	Type	Access	Meaning	Address
EXCH_STS	INT	R	exchange status	%MWr.m.c.0
STS_IN_PROGR	BOOL	R	reading of status words of the channel in progress	%MWr.m.c.0.0
CMD_IN_PROGR	BOOL	R	command parameter write in progress	%MWr.m.c.0.1
ADJ_IN_PROGR	BOOL	R	adjust parameter exchange in progress	%MWr.m.c.0.2
RECONF_IN_PROGR	BOOL	R	reconfiguration in progress	%MWr.m.c.0.15
EXCH_RPT	INT	R	channel report	%MWr.m.c.1
STS_ERR	BOOL	R	channel status cannot be read	%MWr.m.c.1.0
CMD_ERR	BOOL	R	a command cannot be sent on the channel	%MWr.m.c.1.1
ADJ_ERR	BOOL	R	the channel cannot be adjusted	%MWr.m.c.1.2
RECONF_ERR	BOOL	R	the channel cannot be reconfigured	%MWr.m.c.1.15
R = read only				

Status Words

The table below gives the meanings of the status word bits CH_FLT (%MWr.m.c.2). The reading is taken by a READ_STS:

Standard Symbol	Type	Access	Meaning	Address
INTERNAL_FLT	BOOL	R	an internal error has been detected or the self-test cannot be completed	%MWr.m.c.2.4
APPLI_FLT	BOOL	R	an adjustment or configuration error has been detected	%MWr.m.c.2.7
R = read only				

The table below shows the result of a READ_STS call:

Standard Symbol	Type	Access	Meaning	Address
ETH_STATUS	INT	R	Ethernet port global status	%MWr.m.c.3
IP_ADDR	DINT	R	IP address	%MDr.m.c.4

Standard Symbol	Type	Access	Meaning	Address
P502_NB_CONN_DENIED	INT	R	number of denied Port 502 connections	%MWr.m.c.6
BW_MAX_MSG_IN	INT	R	maximum number of received messages on the Ethernet port per second	%MWr.m.c.10
BW_MAX_MSG_BC	INT	R	maximum number of broadcast messages received per second	%MWr.m.c.14
reserved	INT	R	reserved for future use	%MWr.m.c.15
R = read only				

Command Words

This table shows the available command words:

Standard Symbol	Type	Access	Meaning	Address
ETH_RESET	BOOL	W	Ethernet component reset	%MWr.m.c.16.0
BW_CNT_RESET	BOOL	W	max. message counters reset	%MWr.m.c.16.1
P502_CNT_RESET	BOOL	W	messaging counters reset	%MWr.m.c.16.2
W = write only				

The command is carried out with the `WRITE_CMD (IODDT_VAR1)` function.

Details of Explicit Exchange Objects for an Ethernet Function

Overview

The following table objects are not integrated into the IODDTs. Reading is performed by a `READ_STS` call.

Explicit Exchange Objects

Address	Type	Access	Meaning
%MWr.m.c.7	INT	R	number of received messages on the Ethernet port per second (BW_NB_MSG_IN)
%MWr.m.c.8	INT	R	number of useless messages filtered by the Ethernet port per second (BW_NB_MSG_FILTER)
%MWr.m.c.9	INT	R	number of messages dropped by the Ethernet port per second (BW_NB_MSG_DROP)
%MWr.m.c.11	INT	R	maximum number of useless messages filtered by the Ethernet port per second (BW_MAX_MSG_FILTER)
%MWr.m.c.12	INT	R	maximum number of messages dropped by the Ethernet port per second (BW_MAX_MSG_DROP)
%MWr.m.c.13	INT	R	maximum number of multicast messages received per second (BW_MAX_MSG_MC)
R = read only			

Language Objects Associated with BMX NOE 01x0 and BMX P34 20x0 CPU Configuration

About this Section

This section describes the configuration language objects associated with the Ethernet communication modules on BMX NOE 01x0 communication modules and BMX P34 20x0 CPUs.

Language Objects for Configuration

Introduction

This topic describes the language objects for the configuration of the BMX NOE 01x0 modules and BMX P34 20x0 CPUs.

Configuration Words

The following table describes the configuration word (%KW) language objects:

Object		Description
BMX NOE 01x0	BMX P34 20x0	
%KWr.m.c.0	%KWr.m.c.0	reserved for future use
%KWr.m.c.1	%KWr.m.c.1	reserved for future use
%KWr.m.c.2	%KWr.m.c.2	general services configured: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • bit 0 = 1: I/O scanning configured • bit 1 = 1: address server configured • bit 2 = 1: global data configured • bit 3 . . . 15: reserved

Language Objects for Implicit Exchange

Introduction

This topic describes the implicit exchange language objects for the BMX NOE 01x0 module and BMX P34 20x0 CPUs.

Input Bits

The following table describes the input bit (%I) language objects:

Object		Description
BMX NOE 01x0	BMX P34 20x0	
%Ir.m.0.ERR	%Ir.m.3.ERR	line error bit (CH_ERROR)

Input Words

The following table describes the input word (%IW) language objects:

Object		Description
BMX NOE 01x0	BMX P34 20x0	
%IW.r.m.0.0	%IW.r.m.3.0	status of Ethernet services: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • bit 0: port 502 messaging service status (0=OK, 1=NOK) • bit 1: IO Scanner service status (0=OK, 1=NOK) • bit 2: Global Data service status (0=OK, 1=NOK) • bit 3: e-mail service status (0=OK, 1=NOK) • bit 4: FDR Server service status (0=OK, 1=NOK) • bit 5: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ BMX NOE 01x0: reserved for future use ◦ BMX P34 20x0: reserved for compatibility with the BMX NOE 01x0 • bit 6: reserved for future use • bit 7: reserved
%IW.r.m.0.1 ... %IW.r.m.0.4	%IW.r.m.3.1 ... %IW.r.m.3.4	IOS health (or refresh) block: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 64 devices (maximum) • 1 bit per IOS device • 1 = healthy; 0 = unhealthy
%IW.r.m.0.5 ... %IW.r.m.0.8	%IW.r.m.3.5 ... %IW.r.m.3.8	GD health (or refresh) block: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 64 GD stations (maximum) • 1 bit per GD station • 1 = healthy; 0 = unhealthy

Output Words

The following table describes the output word (%QW) language objects:

Object		Description
BMX NOE 01x0	BMX P34 20x0	
%QW.r.m.0.0 ... %QW.r.m.0.3	%QW.r.m.3.0 ... %QW.r.m.3.3	IOS device control (disable/enable) block: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 64 devices (maximum) • 1 bit per IOS device • 1 = disable; 0 = enable

Language Objects for Explicit Exchange

Introduction

This topic describes the explicit exchange language objects for the BMX NOE 01x0 module and BMX P34 20x0 CPUs.

System Words

The following table describes the system word (%MW, READ) language objects:

Object		Description
BMX NOE 01x0	BMX P34 20x0	
%MW.r.m.0.0	%MW.r.m.3.0	exchange status (EXCH_STS): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> bit 0 = 1: reading of status words of the channel in progress (STS_IN_PROGR) bit 1 = 1: command write in progress (CMD_IN_PROGR)
%MW.r.m.0.1	%MW.r.m.3.1	exchange report (EXCH_RPT): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> bit 0 = 1: error while reading channel status (STS_ERR) bit 1 = 1: error while writing a command to the channel (CMD_ERR) <p>Note: Always 0 for the BMX P34 20x0</p>

Status Words

The following table describes the status word (%MW or %MD, READ) language objects:

Object		Description
BMX NOE 01x0	BMX P34 20x0	
%MW.r.m.0.2	%MW.r.m.3.2	Standard channel faults (CH_FLT): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> bit 4 (%MW.r.m.0.2.4) = 1: Internal or channel self-test fault (INTERNAL_FLT) bit 7 (%MW.r.m.0.2.7) = 1: Application fault (APPLI_FLT)
%MW.r.m.0.3	%MW.r.m.3.3	Ethernet Port Global status (ETH_PORT_STATUS)
%MDr.m.0.4	%MDr.m.3.4	IP address (IP_ADDR)
%MW.r.m.0.6	%MW.r.m.3.6	number of denied Port 502 connections (P502_NB_CONN_DENIED)

Object		Description
BMX NOE 01x0	BMX P34 20x0	
%MWr.m.0.7	%MWr.m.3.7	number of received messages on the Ethernet port per second (BW_NB_MSG_IN)
%MWr.m.0.8	%MWr.m.3.8	number of useless messages filtered by the Ethernet port per second (BW_NB_MSG_FILTER)
%MWr.m.0.9	%MWr.m.3.9	number of messages dropped by the Ethernet port per second (BW_NB_MSG_DROP)
%MWr.m.0.10	%MWr.m.3.10	maximum number of received messages on the Ethernet port per second (BW_MAX_MSG_IN)
%MWr.m.0.11	%MWr.m.3.11	maximum number of useless messages filtered by the Ethernet port per second (BW_MAX_MSG_FILTER)
%MWr.m.0.12	%MWr.m.3.12	maximum number of messages dropped by the Ethernet port per second (BW_MAX_MSG_DROP)
%MWr.m.0.13	%MWr.m.3.13	maximum number of Multicast messages received per second (BW_MAX_MSG_MC)
%MWr.m.0.14	%MWr.m.3.14	maximum number of broadcast messages received per second (BW_MAX_MSG_BC)
%MWr.m.0.15	%MWr.m.3.15	reserved for future use

Command Words

The following table describes the command word (%MW, WRITE) language objects:

Object		Description
BMX NOE 01x0	BMX P34 20x0	
%MWr.m.0.16	%MWr.m.3.16	Ethernet command word (ETH_CMD): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • bit 0 = 1 for Ethernet Component Reset (ETH_RESET) • bit 1 = 1 for Max Message Counters reset (BW_CNT_RESET) • bit 2 = 1 for Messaging counters reset (P502_CNT_RESET)
%MWr.m.0.17	%MWr.m.3.17	reserved for modulo 4 address alignment

Parameter Words

The following table describes the parameter word (%MW or %MD, R/W) language objects, please note that parameters are accessible in read using the `READ_STATUS` function:

Object		Description
BMX NOE 01x0	BMX P34 20x0	
%MW.r.m.0.18	%MW.r.m.3.18	PARAM_NET_CONF: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0 = disabled (not supported) • 1 = from screen configuration (default) • 2 = from a server (DHCP server)
%MW.r.m.0.19	%MW.r.m.3.19	PARAM_DRIVER_CONF: (TBD) Bit 0: FRAME_TYPE
%MDr.m.0.20	%MDr.m.3.20	IP address (PARAM_IP_ADDR)
%MW.r.m.0.22	%MW.r.m.3.22	subnetwork mask (PARAM_IP_NETMASK)
%MW.r.m.0.24	%MW.r.m.3.24	default gateway (PARAM_IP_GATEWAY)
%MW.r.m.0.26	%MW.r.m.3.26	device name (character 1 and 2) – PARAM_IP_DEVICE_NAME1
%MW.r.m.0.27	%MW.r.m.3.27	device name (character 3 and 4) – PARAM_IP_DEVICE_NAME2
%MW.r.m.0.28	%MW.r.m.3.28	device name (character 5 and 6) – PARAM_IP_DEVICE_NAME3
%MW.r.m.0.29	%MW.r.m.3.29	device name (character 7 and 8) – PARAM_IP_DEVICE_NAME4
%MW.r.m.0.30	%MW.r.m.3.30	device name (character 9 and 10) – PARAM_IP_DEVICE_NAME5
%MW.r.m.0.31	%MW.r.m.3.31	device name (character 11 and 12) – PARAM_IP_DEVICE_NAME6
%MW.r.m.0.32	%MW.r.m.3.32	device name (character 13 and 14) – PARAM_IP_DEVICE_NAME7
%MW.r.m.0.33	%MW.r.m.3.33	device name (character 15 and 16) – PARAM_IP_DEVICE_NAME8

NOTE: For explicit exchanges, the `READ_PARAM` function is not available for the following modules:

- BMX P34 20x0
- BMX NOE 0100

Language Objects and Generic IODDT Applicable to Communication Protocols

About this Section

This section presents the language objects and generic IODDT applicable to all communication protocols except Fipio and Ethernet.

Details of the Language Objects of the IODDT of Type T_GEN_MOD

Introduction

The Modicon X80 modules have an associated IODDT of type T_GEN_MOD.

Observations

In general, the meaning of the bits is given for bit status 1. In specific cases an explanation is given for each status of the bit.

Some bits are not used.

List of Objects

The table below presents the objects of the IODDT.

Standard Symbol	Type	Access	Meaning	Address
MOD_ERROR	BOOL	R	Module detected error bit	%I.r.m.MOD.ERR
EXCH_STS	INT	R	Module exchange control word	%MWr.m.MOD.0
STS_IN_PROGR	BOOL	R	Reading of status words of the module in progress	%MWr.m.MOD.0.0
EXCH_RPT	INT	R	Exchange report word	%MWr.m.MOD.1
STS_ERR	BOOL	R	Event when reading module status words	%MWr.m.MOD.1.0
MOD_FLT	INT	R	Internal detected errors word of the module	%MWr.m.MOD.2
MOD_FAIL	BOOL	R	module inoperable	%MWr.m.MOD.2.0

Standard Symbol	Type	Access	Meaning	Address
CH_FLT	BOOL	R	Inoperative channel(s)	%MWr.m.MOD.2.1
BLK	BOOL	R	Terminal block incorrectly wired	%MWr.m.MOD.2.2
CONF_FLT	BOOL	R	Hardware or software configuration anomaly	%MWr.m.MOD.2.5
NO_MOD	BOOL	R	Module missing or inoperative	%MWr.m.MOD.2.6
EXT_MOD_FLT	BOOL	R	Internal detected errors word of the module (Fipio extension only)	%MWr.m.MOD.2.7
MOD_FAIL_EXT	BOOL	R	Internal detected error, module unserviceable (Fipio extension only)	%MWr.m.MOD.2.8
CH_FLT_EXT	BOOL	R	Inoperative channel(s) (Fipio extension only)	%MWr.m.MOD.2.9
BLK_EXT	BOOL	R	Terminal block incorrectly wired (Fipio extension only)	%MWr.m.MOD.2.10
CONF_FLT_EXT	BOOL	R	Hardware or software configuration anomaly (Fipio extension only)	%MWr.m.MOD.2.13
NO_MOD_EXT	BOOL	R	Module missing or inoperative (Fipio extension only)	%MWr.m.MOD.2.14

M340 Ethernet Communications Quick Start

What's in This Chapter

Hardware Installation	231
Modicon M340 Configuration with Control Expert	232
Ethernet Network Configuration with Control Expert	234
Assign the BMX NOE 0100 IP Address	235
Configure Ethernet Communication Service (I/O Scanning).....	237
Associate the Network with the Module.....	241
Build a Program	242
Connect the System and Download the Configuration.....	243
Debugging the Module	244

Overview

This quick start procedure helps you to quickly configure Modicon M340 Ethernet communication modules (BMX NOE 01x0, BMX P34 20x0) and set up basic communication services such as I/O scanning.

NOTE: The performance of your module depends on the specific configuration of services and features on the module. To maximize module performance, refer to these Modicon M340 automation platform catalogs:

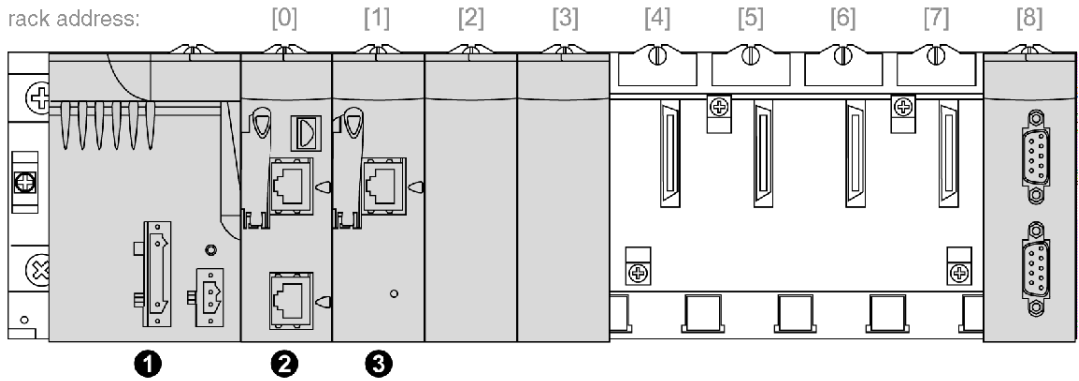
- Ethernet TCP/IP network, Transparent Ready: Performances (43425)
- Communication, integrated ports and modules (0504Q)
- Ethernet TCP/IP network, Transparent Ready: Controller solutions with integrated port or module (43417)

Hardware Installation

Rack Assembly

You can select the appropriate power supply, controller, Ethernet communication module(s), and other M340 modules from the Modicon M340 automation platform catalog (part number 43423).

The following figure shows the rack assembly used for this Quick Start example:



1 power supply

2 BMX P34 2020 in rack slot 0

3 BMX NOE 0100 in rack slot 1

To assemble the rack:

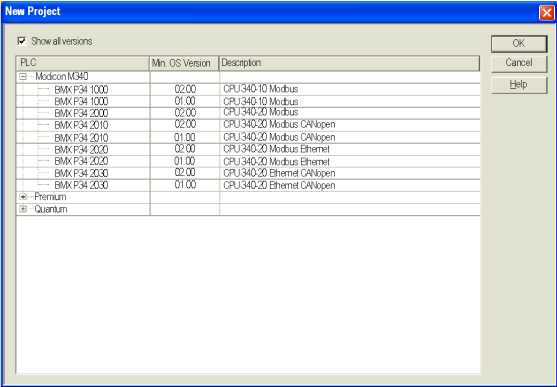
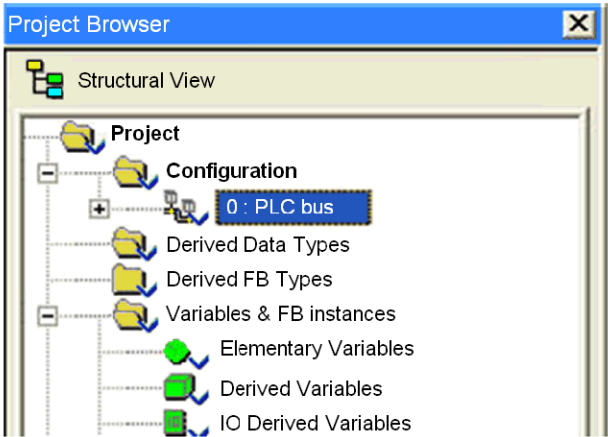
Step	Action	Result
1	Plug the power supply into the leftmost position on the rack.	See the above figure.
2	Add the CPU in the next rack slot.	The example shows the BMX P34 2020 at rack address 0.
3	Place other modules into the remaining available rack slots.	The example shows the BMX NOE 0100 at rack address 1.

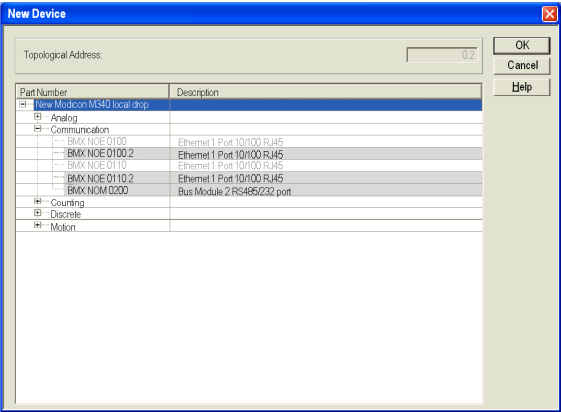
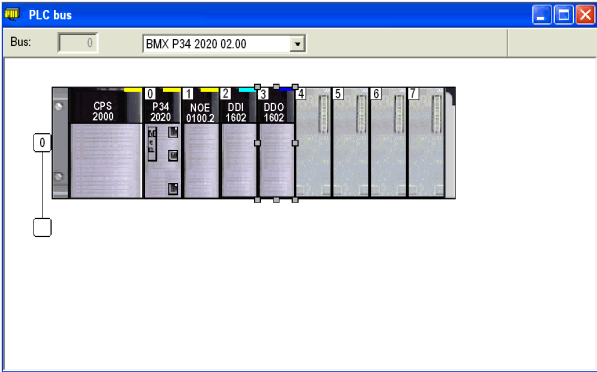
Modicon M340 Configuration with Control Expert

Instructions

Use these instructions to configure an M340 Ethernet module with Control Expert:

Step	Action
1	Open the Control Expert software from the Start menu. Note: The name of your Control Expert package (<i>Control Expert M</i> , <i>Control Expert L</i> , <i>Control Expert XL</i> , etc.) may vary.
2	In the File menu, select New... to create a new project.

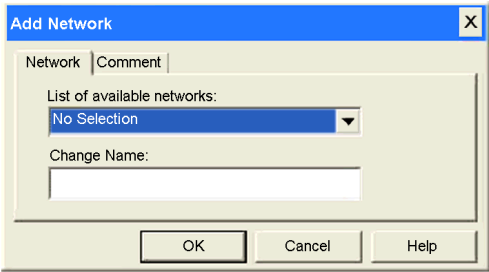
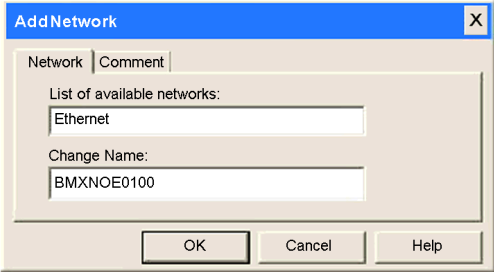
Step	Action
3	<p>In the New Project screen, expand the Modicon M340 family to select the installed controller:</p> 
4	<p>In the Project Browser screen, double-click Project > Configuration > PLC bus to access the configuration of the local rack:</p> 

Step	Action
5	<p>Double-click each slot to show the hardware catalog. Choose the appropriate module part numbers. Drag or double-click the part numbers from the catalog list to insert modules into the local rack:</p> 
6	<p>A sample view of a finished rack assembly shows the BMX P34 2020 at rack address 0 and the BMX NOE 0100 at address 1:</p> 

Ethernet Network Configuration with Control Expert

Instructions

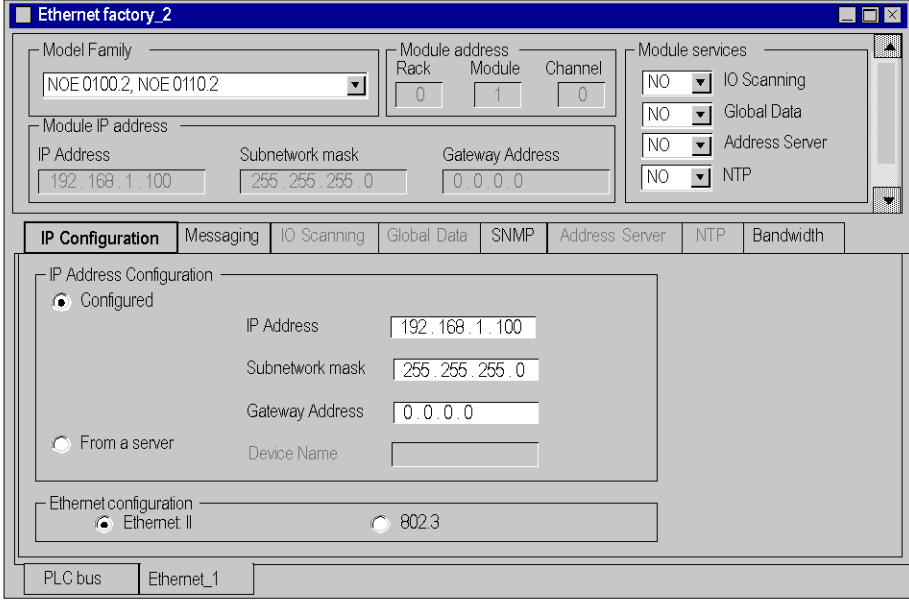
Add a new Ethernet network:

Step	Action
1	<p>In the Project Browser, right-click the Network subdirectory in the Communication directory and select the New Network option. The Add Network screen appears:</p> 
2	<p>In the List of available networks, scroll to Ethernet and enter a meaningful network name in the Change Name field. (We used the name <i>BMXNOE0100</i> in our example).</p> 
3	Click OK .

Assign the BMX NOE 0100 IP Address

Assign IP Parameters

Assign IP parameters to the M340 Ethernet communications module:

Step	Action	Comment
1	<p>From the Project Browser, open the new logical network (BMXNOE0100 in this example) under Communication > Networks. The BMXNOE0100 network configuration screen appears:</p>  <p>Note: The example uses the BMX NOE 0100 module. Use these same steps to configure IP parameters for M340 CPUs with Ethernet ports (BMX P34 2020 and BMX P34 2030/20302).</p>	
2	<p>In the Model Family list, select the appropriate module family.</p>	
3	<p>On the IP Configuration tab, select Configured.</p>	<p>You can now manually configure IP parameters.</p>
4	<p>Enter the appropriate values in the IP address, Subnetwork mask, and Gateway address fields. (For safety reasons, consult your network administrator who can assign network parameters.)</p>	<p>Example parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IP address: 192.168.1.100 • subnetwork mask: 255.255.255.0 • gateway address: 0.0.0.0
5	<p>Click the validate toolbar icon to confirm the IP configuration setting.</p>	

Configure Ethernet Communication Service (I/O Scanning)

Introduction

The Modicon BMX NOE 01x0 modules support Ethernet communication services (such as I/O scanning, global data, Modbus messaging, SNMP, etc.).

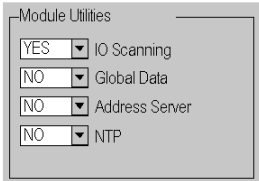
I/O Scanning Service

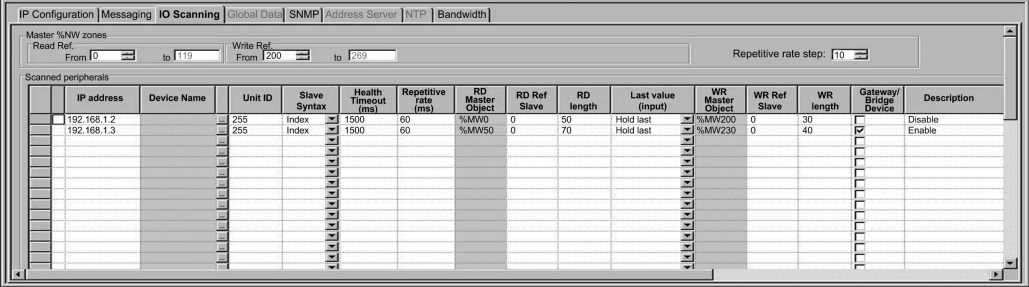
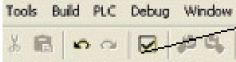
This example shows you how to configure one service, I/O scanning. Use this service to:

- Transfer data between network devices
- Allow a CPU to regularly read data from and write data to scanned devices

Accessing I/O Scanning

Configure the I/O scanning service with the Control Expert software:

Step	Action
1	Open your application using the BMX NOE 01x0 in Control Expert.
2	In the Project browser, locate the Communication\Networks sub directory.
3	Click the Ethernet module (BMX NOE 01x0 in our example) to open the Ethernet module configuration screen.
4	Select Yes in the Module Utilities menu: <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;">  <p>Module Utilities</p> <p>YES IO Scanning</p> <p>NO Global Data</p> <p>NO Address Server</p> <p>NO NTP</p> </div>
5	Select the IO Scanning tab to open the I/O scanning configuration screen.

Step	Action																																													
	 <p>The screenshot shows the 'IO Scanning' configuration window. At the top, there are tabs for 'IP Configuration', 'Messaging', 'IO Scanning', 'Global Data', 'SNMP', 'Address Server', 'NTP', and 'Bandwidth'. Below the tabs, there are fields for 'Read Ref.' (From 0 to 119) and 'Write Ref.' (From 200 to 269), along with a 'Repetitive rate step' set to 10. The main area is a table titled 'Scanned peripherals' with the following columns: IP address, Device Name, Unit ID, Slave Syntax, Health Timeout (ms), Repetitive rate (ms), RD Master Object, RD Ref Slave, RD length, Last value (input), WR Master Object, WR Ref Slave, WR length, Gateway/Bridge Device, and Description. Two rows are visible in the table:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>IP address</th> <th>Device Name</th> <th>Unit ID</th> <th>Slave Syntax</th> <th>Health Timeout (ms)</th> <th>Repetitive rate (ms)</th> <th>RD Master Object</th> <th>RD Ref Slave</th> <th>RD length</th> <th>Last value (input)</th> <th>WR Master Object</th> <th>WR Ref Slave</th> <th>WR length</th> <th>Gateway/Bridge Device</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>192.168.1.2</td> <td></td> <td>255</td> <td>Index</td> <td>1500</td> <td>60</td> <td>%MW0</td> <td>0</td> <td>50</td> <td>Hold last</td> <td>%MW200</td> <td>0</td> <td>30</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>Disable</td> </tr> <tr> <td>192.168.1.3</td> <td></td> <td>255</td> <td>Index</td> <td>1500</td> <td>60</td> <td>%MW60</td> <td>0</td> <td>70</td> <td>Hold last</td> <td>%MW230</td> <td>0</td> <td>40</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td>Enable</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	IP address	Device Name	Unit ID	Slave Syntax	Health Timeout (ms)	Repetitive rate (ms)	RD Master Object	RD Ref Slave	RD length	Last value (input)	WR Master Object	WR Ref Slave	WR length	Gateway/Bridge Device	Description	192.168.1.2		255	Index	1500	60	%MW0	0	50	Hold last	%MW200	0	30	<input type="checkbox"/>	Disable	192.168.1.3		255	Index	1500	60	%MW60	0	70	Hold last	%MW230	0	40	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enable
IP address	Device Name	Unit ID	Slave Syntax	Health Timeout (ms)	Repetitive rate (ms)	RD Master Object	RD Ref Slave	RD length	Last value (input)	WR Master Object	WR Ref Slave	WR length	Gateway/Bridge Device	Description																																
192.168.1.2		255	Index	1500	60	%MW0	0	50	Hold last	%MW200	0	30	<input type="checkbox"/>	Disable																																
192.168.1.3		255	Index	1500	60	%MW60	0	70	Hold last	%MW230	0	40	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enable																																
6	<p>Enter the parameter settings under each of the column headings for one line of the I/O Scanner Configuration. Refer to I/O Scanning Parameters (below) to see the settings used for this example.</p>																																													
7	<p>Click the validate check box in the upper tool bar to confirm the I/O scanning parameter settings:</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a toolbar with buttons for 'Tools', 'Build', 'PLC', 'Debug', and 'Window'. A check box labeled 'Validate' is highlighted with a red arrow and the text 'Validate check box'.</p>																																													

I/O Scanner Parameters above I/O Scanner Table

A description of the parameters above the I/O scanning table used in the example are listed in the following table:

Parameter	Field	Description
Read Ref.	<i>From and to data boxes</i>	The values in these boxes define the range of destination address values in the CPU for the data read from each device. The addresses you enter here are displayed in the RD Master Object column of the dialog. In the example above, the Read Ref. values range from 0 to 599; notice that these values are displayed as %MW0, %MW599, etc. in the Master Object column.
Write Ref.	<i>From and to data boxes</i>	The values in these boxes define the range of source address values in the CPU. The address you enter here is displayed in the WR Master Object column. In the example above, values starting at %MW2000 are shown in the WR Master Object column.
Repetitive Rate Step	data box	<p>The Repetitive Rate Step is set in multiples of 5 ms (the minimum) through 200 ms (the maximum).</p> <p>The Repetitive Rate column is where you enter a rate of time for how often you want the I/O scanner to send a query to the device after the rate has timed out.</p> <p>NOTE: The Repetitive Rate of the I/O scanner table is a multiple of the rate displayed in the Repetitive Rate Step. The real repetitive rate being executed by the I/O scanner service is shown in the Repetitive Rate column.</p> <p>Note: An entry in the Repetitive Rate column is rounded up to the next multiple that was entered in the Repetitive Rate Step box if the entry is not a multiple of the Repetitive Rate Step.</p> <p>For example, if the entry in the Repetitive Rate Step is 5 and you enter a 7 in the Repetitive Rate column, the 7 is rounded up to 10; if you change the Repetitive Rate Step to 6 and enter a 7 in the Repetitive Rate column, the 7 is rounded up to 12.</p>

I/O Scanner Table Parameters

A description of the parameters in the I/O scanning table used in the example are listed in the following table:

Parameter	Description	Example
Entry #	<p>This is the first column; it has no name.</p> <p>Valid range: 1 ... 64</p> <p>Each entry represents an I/O Scanning exchange on the network.</p>	
IP Address	This is the IP address of the scanned Ethernet slave device.	192.168.1.100
Device Name	<p>To configure a device (Advantys island or DTM), click the ... button to open the Property box, page 161 to start the device configuration software.</p> <p>For an introduction to this procedure for Advantys, go here, page 152.</p> <p>For an introduction to this procedure for DTMs, go FDT Container.</p>	MySTB1 or Master_PRM_DTM_10

Parameter	Description	Example
	NOTE: While the Property box is open, I/O scanning cannot be edited.	
Unit ID	This field associates the slave address of the device connected to an Ethernet/Modbus gateway with the IP address of that gateway: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Value range: 1 to 255 Default value: 255 When using a bridge, enter the bridge index (1 to 255) in this field.	255
Slave Syntax	Use this drop-down menu to pick the way RD Ref Slave and WR Ref Slave values are displayed. There are 4 types of display available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Index: 100 Modbus: 400101 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (Modbus register) IEC 0: %MW100 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> M340 and Premium PLC slaves IEC 1: %MW101 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Quantum PLC slaves 	Index (default value)
Health Timeout (ms)	This field sets the maximum interval between the responses from a remote device. After this time period expires, the received data is invalid. The Health Timeout must be longer than the Repetitive Rate time (ms). For a BMX NOE Ethernet module, it also should be longer than the CPU scan time. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Range: 1ms to 50 s Interval: 1ms 	1500ms
Repetitive rate (ms)	The rate at which data is scanned, from 0..60000 in multiples of the Repetitive Rate Step .	60 ms
RD Master Object*	Destination address in the master PLC where, from each device, newly read information is stored. This parameter cannot be accessed. It is calculated automatically as the sum of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The From address (beginning) of Read ref. (in the zone above the table) The RD length value (in the table below) 	%mw10
RD Slave Ref. **	Source address index in the slave/remote device	The format of this value depends on the Slave Syntax : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Index: 5 Modbus: 400006 IEC 0: %MW5 IEC 1: %MW6
RD length	Number of words to read	10

Parameter	Description	Example
Last value (Input)	This field configures the behavior of inputs in the event of an access error in relation to the remote device (for example: inoperative network or device power supply, etc.): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to 0: fall back to 0 Hold last: maintain last value 	Hold last
WR Master Object*	Source address of the master PLC whose data is being written into the slave/remote device. This parameter cannot be accessed. It is calculated automatically as the sum of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The From address (beginning) of Write ref. (in the zone above the table) The WR length value (in the table below) Write operations are always performed at the word level.	%mw20
WR Slave Ref.**	The address of the first word written into the slave/remote device.	The format of this value depends on the Slave Syntax : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Index: 1 Modbus: 400002 IEC 0: %MW1 IEC 1: %MW2
WR length	Number of words to be written	10
Description	Additional information	
*Master refers to the client PLC that makes the request.		
**Slave refers to the server from which data is read or to which data is written.		

NOTE: Refer to Information about **I/O Scanning with Multiple Lines**, page 150.

NOTE: Refer to Information about the **I/O Scanning** table Contextual Menu for Copy/Cut/Paste, page 149.

Associate the Network with the Module

Instructions

Associate the new logical network with the BMX NOE 0100 module:

Step	Action	Comment
1	In the Project Browser , double-click PLC Bus to show the rack configuration.	
2	Double-click the BMX NOE 0100 module.	The network link screen appears.
3	Under BMX NOE 0100 , click Channel 0 (item 1 in the figure) to display the function.	
4	At Function (item 2), scroll to ETH TCP IP .	
5	Choose the name of your logical network (in this case, BMXNOE0100) from Net Link (item 3).	
6	Click the validate toolbar icon (item 4) to confirm the network link (Net Link) configuration.	

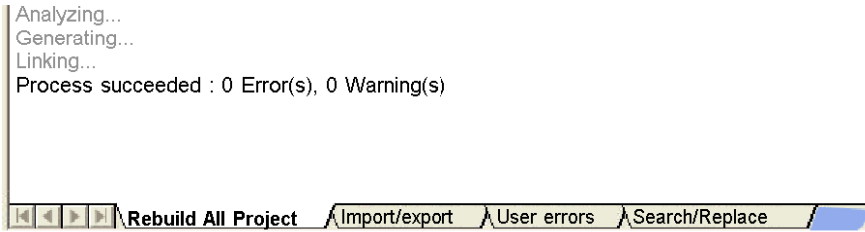
Build a Program

The Build Command

Before building the program, make sure you select the standard mode, not the simulation mode, on the toolbar.

Build the entire program before downloading it to your PLC.

Choose **Build > Rebuild All Project** to build the program:



The program should build without errors.

Connect the System and Download the Configuration

Introduction

This topic tells you how to connect the M340 system to the Control Expert software and download the configuration program.

Connect and Download

You can download a built program to the PLC. To do this, link the PLC to the Control Expert software through USB (cable), Ethernet, or Modbus. This example uses a USB cable to connect Control Expert to the M340 system:

Step	Action
1	Confirm that the M340 system is powered up.
2	Open the Set Address screen (PLC > Set Address).
3	In the Communication Protocol menu, select one of the ... via USB protocols.
4	Press OK .
5	Make a connection to the M340 system (PLC > Connect).
6	Open the Transfer Project to PLC screen (PLC > Transfer Project to PLC).
7	Click the Transfer button to transfer the product.

Step	Action
8	Press OK on the confirmation screen.
9	At the Control Expert screen, press Run to run the program.

Debugging the Module

Introduction

You can debug the Ethernet module by examining the physical LEDs on the front of the module or the debug screen in the Control Expert software. This topic describes the latter, the debug screen.

Access the Debug Screen

To access Control Expert's debug screen:

Step	Action
1	On the Control Expert tab, select PLC > Connect to link to the M340 system.
2	In the Project Browser , double-click BMXNOE0100 at Station > Configuration > PLC bus .
3	Select the Debug tab to display the debug screen (below).

The Control Expert debug screen:

Ethernet 1 Port 10/100 RJ45 Version: 1.0

Run Err. STS

BMX NOE 0100 Channel 0

Config Debug Fault

Address information

From a server MAC Address 00.00.54.00.1D.B7
IP Address 192.168.1.100
Subnetwork mask 255.255.0.0
Gateway Address 0.0.0.0

NTP

NTP status Link to the NTP Server Primary
DST status Daylight Saving Time NTP server IP address 192.168.16.10
Time zone (GMT-05:00)Eastern Standard Time(New York)
Requests 12 Responses 11 Errors 16#1 Last error 16#0

Messages

Open connections 0 Reset counters
Non-authorized 0 Ping
Messages refused 0 Bandwidth
Messages received 0
Messages sent 0

Message traffic (msg./min) 2000 msg/sec

Min: 0 Avg: 0 Max: 0 Reset

I/O Scanning

Not configured 16 17
 Scanned 32 33
I/O Scanning enabled Unscanned 48 49
 Faulty or absent 64

Global data

Not configured 16 17
 SUB variable 32 33
Global Data enabled Default SUB 48 49
 PUB variable 64

Function: ETH TCP/IP
Task: WMAST
Network link: noe

NOTE: The debug screen dynamically updates the Ethernet module's communication services (I/O scanning, global data, etc.).

Embedded Web Pages

What's in This Part

Embedded Web Pages.....	247
-------------------------	-----

Embedded Web Pages

What's in This Chapter

M340 Web Pages	247
Ethernet Service Diagnostics Pages.....	260
Class C Services	264

Introduction

This chapter discusses the embedded web pages for modules that can communicate on Ethernet networks.

The installed HyperText Transfer Protocol (HTTP) server transmits Web pages between a server and a browser, providing Ethernet communications modules with easy access to devices anywhere in the world through standard browsers such as Internet Explorer or Netscape Navigator.

M340 Web Pages

Introduction

This section describes the Web pages associated with the BMX NOE 0100 and BMX P34 2020/2030 CPUs in terms of appearance and access rights.

Introduction to Web Services

Enabling Web Services

Depending on the type of memory card, page 49 the slot, the BMX NOE 0100 can access either:

- the basic pages on the Web site
- the user-customizable pages on the Web site

Embedded Ethernet

Schneider Electric communication modules (and CPUs with embedded Ethernet ports) have integrated Web services that communicate on Ethernet TCP/IP using:

- real-time communication functions based on Ethernet TCP/IP
- predefined Web pages for advanced installation diagnostics

When the memory card with class C services is inserted into a communications module, the module provides transparent access to system and application diagnostic information in real time, using Web technologies.

Communication modules integrate TCP/IP services (Modbus messaging, SNMP functions, etc.) and offer:

- standard Web services
- the capacity to host dynamic user-defined Web pages or any document (doc, pdf, etc.) designed to assist maintenance

NOTE: The sample Web screens shown in this chapter are for the **BMX NOE 0100** module with class C services, page 264. They may not represent the exact functionality of other modules.

Creating Web Pages

Web modules have an 16-Mbyte memory (accessed like a hard drive) that you can use to host Web pages and user-defined documents (maintenance manuals, diagrams, etc.) created in standard applications such as Word or Acrobat Reader. These pages can be created using any standard tool that enables creation and editing in HTML format (such as MicroSoft FrontPage).

You may want to create Web pages, page 264:

- to display and modify all PLC variables in real time
- to create hyperlinks to other external Web servers (documentation, suppliers, etc.)

This function is particularly suited to creating graphic screens for:

- display, monitoring, diagnostics
- generation of real-time production reports
- maintenance help
- operator guides

Diagnostics from Web Pages

The embedded Web server provides Web pages to diagnose the following Transparent Factory / Real Time services:

- Global Data diagnostics
 - status of all Global Data services
 - status of all subscribed and published variables
 - publication/subscription rate
- I/O scanning diagnostics
 - status of all I/O Scanning services
 - status of individual scanned devices
 - actual I/O scanning rate
- messaging diagnostics
 - diagnostic information for Port 502 messaging
- bandwidth monitoring
 - throughput measurement of NOE by service

NOTE: All these pages are protected by the general HTTP password.

Embedded HTTP Server

Introduction

Some Ethernet modules include an embedded Web server, which allows:

- access to PLC data
- diagnostics to be carried out on the entire configuration

All the controller or module data is presented as standard Web pages in HTML format. Access Web pages with Internet Explorer 4.0 or higher running JRE 1.4.1_04 or higher.

None of the functions supplied by the Web site require any prior configuration or programming within the module.

The summary table below shows the various selections possible. According to the type of module, the availability of these functions changes:

Function	BMX NOE 0100	BMX P34 2020	BMX P34 2030/ 20302
server	X	X	X
predefined pages	X	X	X
user-customized pages*	X	—	—
client site size*	16 MB	—	—
<p>Legend:</p> <p>X: available</p> <p>—: not available</p> <p>*Requires the BMXRWSC016M memory card, page 50.</p>			

Embedded Server Functions

The functions available on an embedded server are generally as follows:

- [Ethernet services, page 260](#): These pages report the status of Ethernet network services.
- [security, page 257](#): This page is used to modify the user name and the password to access the site.
- [rack display, page 254](#): This page enables you to display the configuration of the PLC which is controlling the module.
- [data editor, page 177](#): This page allows you to display PLC data.
- [diagnostics, page 253](#): This pages allow network diagnostics.

BMX NOE 0100 Home Page

Home Page

Access the BMX NOE 0100 home page by entering the IP address of the module in a web browser. (No password is required to display the home page.)



Copyright © 1998-2008, Schneider Automation SAS. All Rights Reserved.

Links

From the BMX NOE 0100 home page, you can access the following pages:

- [Monitoring, page 252](#)
- [Diagnostics, page 253](#)
- [Setup, page 256](#)

BMX NOE 0100 Monitoring Page

Monitoring Page

From the BMX NOE 0100 home page, page 251, click the **Monitoring** link to display this page:



Links

From the BMX NOE 0100 Monitoring page, you can access the following Data Editor pages:

- **Lite:** This smaller version of the Data Editor loads faster, but can access most of the same Modicon M340 PLC data.
- **Standard:** Allows access to Modicon M340 PLC data.

BMX NOE 0100 Diagnostics Page

Diagnostics Page

From the BMX NOE 0100 home page, page 251, click the **Diagnostics** link to display this page:



BMX NOE 0100 B

Home Documentation URL

Monitoring Control Diagnostics Maintenance Setup

Diagnostics

Rack viewer

Ethernet

Global Data

IO Scanning

Messaging

Statistics

Bandwidth Monitoring

Upload MIB file

Properties

Copyright 1998-2008, Schneider Automation SAS. All Rights Reserved.

Links

From the BMX NOE 0100 Diagnostics page, you can access the following pages:

- **Rack viewer (Lite)**: See the description for the Rack Viewer page, page 254.

- **Ethernet:** You can diagnose the status of Ethernet services through these links:
 - Global Data, page 260
 - IO Scanning, page 261
 - Messaging, page 262
 - Statistics, page 263
 - Bandwidth Monitoring, page 264
 - Upload MIB file, page 259
- Properties, page 260

Server Rack Display Page

Introduction

This page allows you to carry out diagnostics on the modules in the local rack configuration that includes the Ethernet module.

By clicking on a module in the configuration, you obtain a set of diagnostic information on this module:

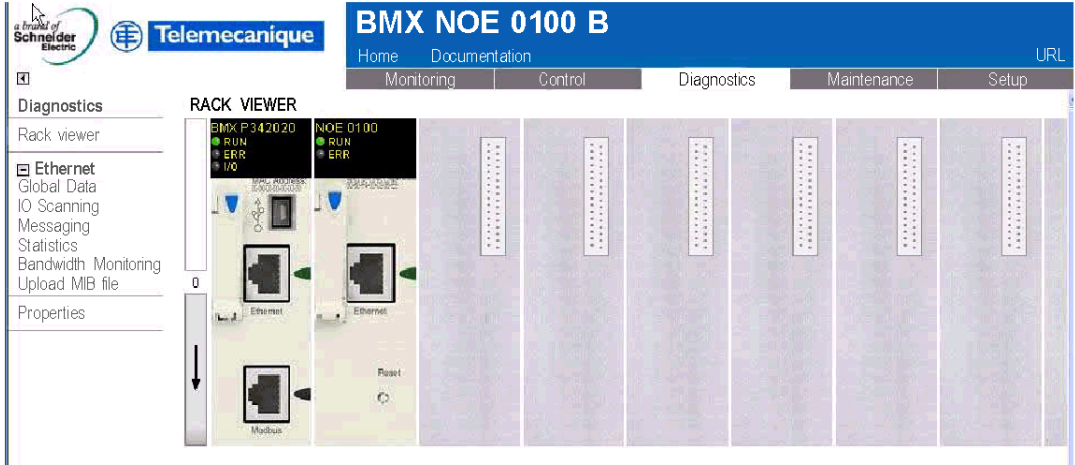
- LED status display
- the type and the version of the module as well as its position in the rack
- information specific to the functions of the module

Accessing the Server Rack Display Page

Follow this procedure to access the rack display page from the index page:

Step	Action
1	Click the Diagnostics link.
2	Click the Rack Viewer link.

The NOE 0100 rack display page appears. An example is shown below:



Copyright © 1998-2008, Schneider Automation SAS. All Rights Reserved.

BMX NOE 0100 Setup Page

Setup Page

From the BMX NOE 0100 home page, page 251, click the **Setup** link to display this page:

The screenshot shows the web interface for the BMX NOE 0100 B. At the top left, there are logos for 'a brand of Schneider Electric' and 'Telemecanique'. The main header is blue with the text 'BMX NOE 0100 B' and navigation links for 'Home', 'Documentation', and 'URL'. Below the header is a horizontal menu with tabs for 'Monitoring', 'Control', 'Diagnostics', 'Maintenance', and 'Setup'. The 'Setup' tab is selected. On the left side, there is a sidebar with a 'Setup' link and a 'Security' link. The main content area features a photograph of the BMX NOE 0100 B device, a white industrial module with an Ethernet port and a reset button. Below the image is the copyright notice: 'Copyright © 1998-2008, Schneider Automation SAS. All Rights Reserved.'

Links

From the BMX NOE 0100 **Setup** page, you can access the following password pages:

- Security, page 257

FTP Security Page

Introduction

You can modify the username and password for FTP access rights on this page.

NOTE: You can download Web pages to the C type memory card over FTP.

FTP Page

The Setup page, page 256 has a link to the FTP password page:

FTP access rights

Username (1-40 characters):

New password (1-40 characters):

Copyright © 2000-2008, Schneider Automation SAS. All rights reserved.

To modify the FTP username and password:

Step	Action
1	Enter the new username. (The default is USER.)
2	Enter the new password. (The default is USER.)
3	Confirm the new password by entering it again.
4	Confirm the modification using the Change Password button.

HTTP and Data Editor (Write) Page

Introduction

Access this page with the **Security** link on the Setup page, page 256. Use the Security page to:

- modify the user name and the password for accessing the index page
- modify the password for writing variables in the data editor (You can read the data editor values without a password.)

The maximum size of the user name or passwords is 16 characters (non-extended ASCII).

The Security Page

The security page appears:

HTTP access rights

Username:	<input type="text"/>
New password:	<input type="text"/>
Confirm password:	<input type="text"/>

Data Editor Write Password

Data Editor Write password:	<input type="text"/>
New write password:	<input type="text"/>
Confirm write password:	<input type="text"/>

Copyright © 2000-2008, Schneider Automation SAS. All rights reserved.

Modify the HTTP access rights:

Step	Action
1	Enter the new username (default is USER).
2	Enter the new password (default is USER).
3	Confirm the new password by entering it again.
4	Confirm the modification using the Change Password button. Result: An Ethernet Configuration page appears.
5	Click the Reboot Device button to recognize the modification in the module.

Modify the Data Editor Write Password:

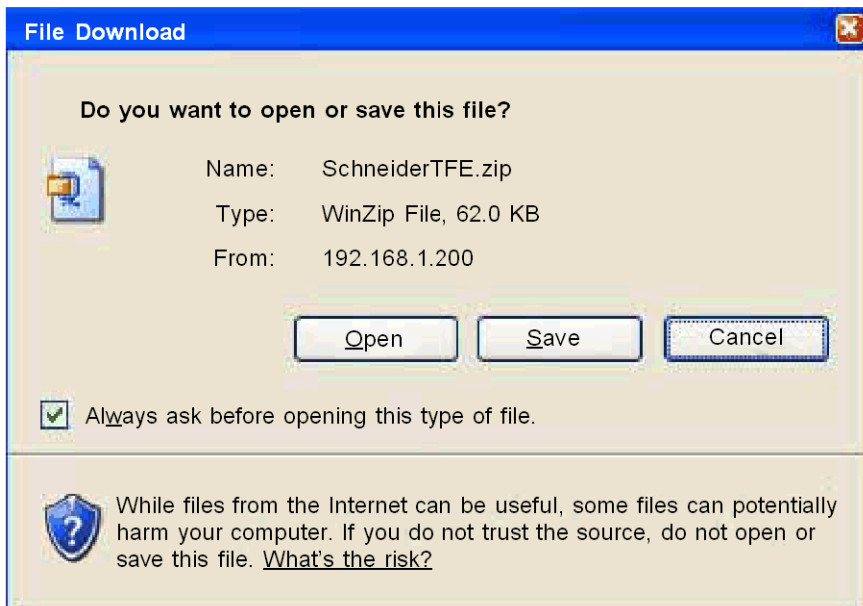
Step	Action
1	Enter the current password (case sensitive). (The default value of this field is: USER.)
2	Enter the new password (default is USER).

Step	Action
3	Confirm the new password by entering it again.
4	Confirm the modification with the Change Write Password button. Result: An Ethernet Configuration page appears, indicating that the password has been modified.

Upload MIB File

File Download Dialog

When you select **Upload MIB File**, the **File Download** dialog box appears. You are asked if you want to save the MIB file or open it:



Properties

Dialog Box

The **Properties** dialog box is accessible through a link from several embedded Web pages. The **Properties** link reports the properties of the Web pages:

Exec Version:	<input type="text" value="2.00"/>
Kernel Version:	<input type="text" value="1.09"/>
Web Server Version:	<input type="text" value="2.0.4"/>
Web Site Version:	<input type="text" value="2.00.02"/>
Physical Media :	<input type="text" value="10/100BASE-T"/>

Ethernet Service Diagnostics Pages

Introduction

You can link to the screens in this section to diagnose the performance of Ethernet services. Access these screens through the Ethernet menu on the Web pages associated with your module.

Global Data

Diagnostics Page

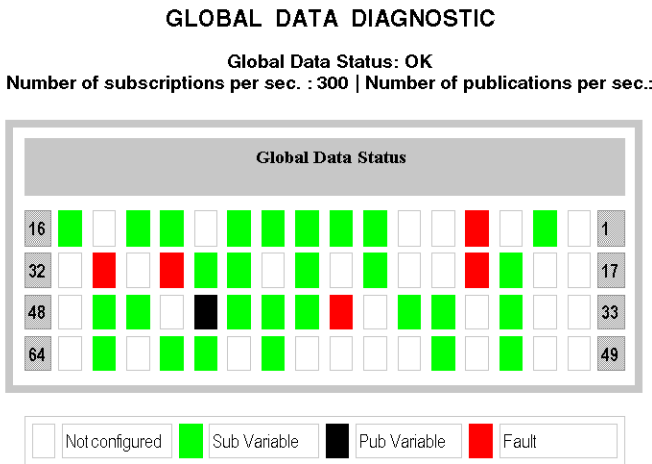
Click this link to see these Global Data diagnostics:

- status
- number of publications per second
- number of subscriptions per second

This page also shows a table that regroups all published and subscribed variables in the same distribution group. The nature of each variable is identified by its color code:

- green
subscribed variables
- black
published variables
- white
unconfigured variables
- red
variables with communication faults

View of the Global Data diagnostics page:



I/O Scanning

Diagnostics Page

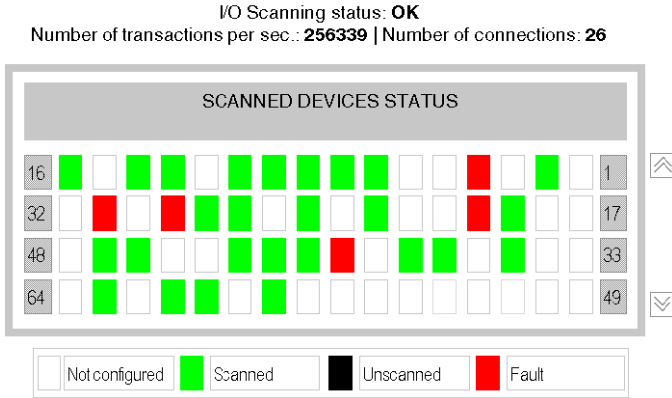
Click this link to see these diagnostics of the I/O Scanner:

- status
- number of transactions per second
- number of connections per second

This page also displays a summary of the status of all modules:

- **green**: scanned modules
- **black**: unscanned modules
- **white**: unconfigured modules
- **red**: faulty modules

View of the I/O scanning diagnostics page:



Copyright 1998-2007, Schneider Automation SAS. All rights reserved.

Messaging

Diagnostics Page

Click this link to see the current information on the open TCP connection on port 502.

MESSAGING DIAGNOSTIC

Number of Messages sent: **38** | Number of Messages received: **183**

Conn.#	Remote address	Remote Port	Local Port	Mess. Sent	Mess. Received	Error Sent
1	192.160.10.20	1920	502	20	12	0
2	139.160.235.90	2020	502	0	30	02
3	192.160.10.21	502	3000	3	60	0
4	139.160.234.20	1050	502	15	42	0
5	139.160.234.18	5120	502	0	39	1

The number of sent/received messages on the port can be found at the top of this page. A table provides, for each connection (numbered from 1 to 64):

- Remote address
remote IP Address
- Remote Port
remote TCP port
- Local Port
local TCP port
- Mess. Sent
number of messages sent from this connection
- Mess. Received
number of messages received from this connection
- Error Sent
error number on this connection

Statistics

Diagnostics Page

This page shows the Ethernet module statistics that are used to diagnose network activity:

Status:	100 Mb/s	Host Name:	192.168.102
Reference:	BMX NOE 0100	MAC Address:	00 90 f4 05 00 92
Rack:	0	IP Address:	192.168.1.102
Slot:	3	Subnet Mask:	255.255.255.0
Transmit Speed:	100 MB	Gateway Address:	192.168.1.1

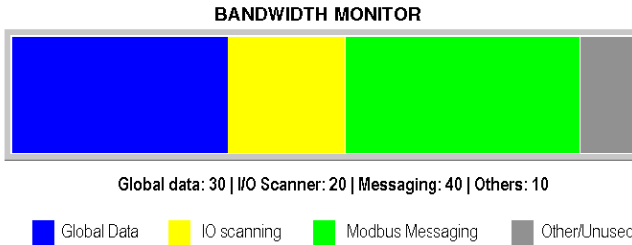
Transmit Statistics		Receive Statistics		Functioning Errors	
Transmits	888	Receives	88598	Missed Packets	0
Transmit Retries	0	Framing Errors	0	Collision Errors	0
Lost Carrier	0	Overflow Errors	0	Transmit timeouts	0
Late Collision	0	CRC Errors	0	Memory Errors	0
Transmit Buffer Errors	0	Receive Buffer Errors	0	Net Interface Restarts	0
Silo Underflow	0				

Reset Counters

Bandwidth Monitoring

Diagnostics Page

Click this link to see the load distribution of the module among services (Global Data, I/O Scanning, Messaging, and others.) The distribution of the load among services is represented as a percentage:



Class C Services

Introduction

This section describes the Class C Web services that are applicable to the BMX NOE 0100 module.

Introduction to Class C Services

Overview

Features of Class C services for the BMX NOE 0100 module:

- Using a simple Internet browser, class C services allow you to control, configure, and monitor plant data locally and remotely. Monitoring and control can be enhanced with user-customized Web pages.

- Class C services provide the functions and features of the Graphic Editor, a Java applet that enables you to create dynamic graphic displays with a Web browser, using a set of pre-defined graphic objects. The Graphic Editor is only used as an editor for creating and modifying displays. The Graphic Viewer is the run-time environment for viewing displays while they are dynamically animated with run-time data from the PLC. The viewer is lighter than the editor, resulting in faster loading times and operation.

Download Web Pages to Memory Card

The BMX NOE 0100 has an embedded FTP server. Class C services allow you to use any FTP client (like Windows Explorer) to download Web pages or user-defined documentation to the memory card through the [FTP security page, page 256](#).

You can also change the FTP password.

NOTE: Downloading write-protected files to the memory card can prevent the Unity loader from properly upgrading the module. Some FTP clients (for example, the Windows Explorer client) can not remove write-protected files from the card. You can delete write-protected files from the card with some FTP clients.

Graphic Editor Overview

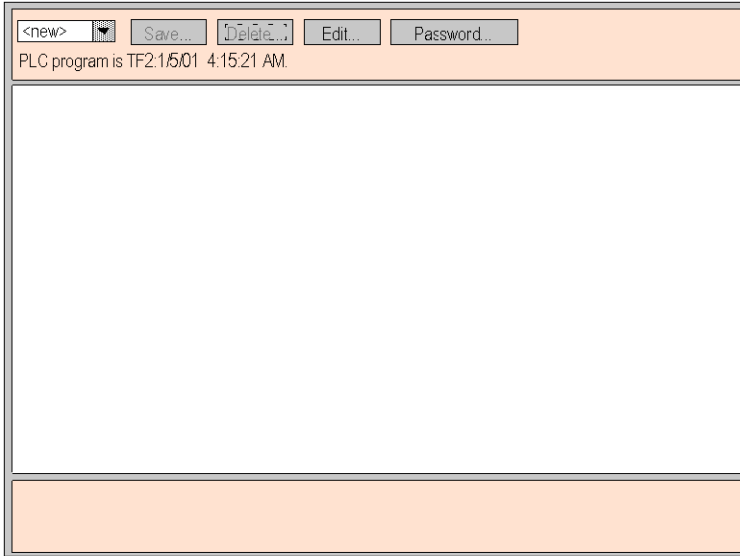
The Interface

The Graphic Editor applet is separated into three windows:

- Top Window: This window provides the area for presenting all the user controls and dialogs for creating, saving, reading, and editing a graphic display.
- Display Window: This window provides an area for presenting the current graphic display. When you create a new graphic display, this window becomes an "empty canvas" on which you can add the graphic objects that will compose the desired graphic display.
- Message Window: This window presents any messages generated by the Graphic Editor.

Illustration

The figure below shows the Graphic Editor applet with its initial top window, and empty display and message windows.



Graphic Objects

All graphic objects provided with the Graphic Editor are capable of communicating with the PLC from which the Graphic Editor applet was downloaded. There is no additional "wiring" of the graphic objects with "communication objects." All graphic objects are standalone, meaning there are no connections required between them and each is capable of operating independently.

Viewing a Graphic Display

After the Graphic Editor applet has been uploaded to a Web browser, you will usually want to either view a graphic display (for monitoring/controlling the PLC application) or create or modify a graphic display. A user who only wants to view and interact with existing graphic displays (e.g., an operator) can select the Graphic Viewer link instead of Graphic Editor. They will see a window with the widgets that does not include the Edit menu. This viewer loads faster than the standard Graphic Editor because it is lighter. You need only to enter a password to write data to the PLC.

Create and Modify Graphic Displays

To create and modify graphic displays, click the **Edit...** button to see the standard graphic editor functions. These include selecting objects from a palette, dropping them onto a canvas, moving and resizing them with a mouse, and setting object properties. You can immediately test the modified graphic display with run-time data from the PLC by clicking the **Done** button to exit edit mode. When satisfied with your creation, the graphic display can be saved to the PLC for re-use by clicking the **Save...** button, assuming you entered the correct password.

User Functions

Most of the Graphic Editor's user functions are available as [Top Window User Functions](#), page 267. From the display window, you can directly manipulate a graphic object's size and location. All properties of a graphic object (e.g., scaling values, labels, colors, PLC addresses of the run-time data) are set in the [Property Sheet](#), page 275.

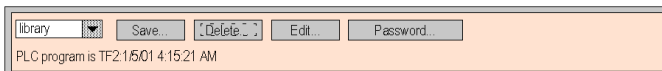
Top Window User Functions

Overview

The Graphic Editor applet's top window consists of several "dialog panels," only one of which is visible at any time. Switching from one dialog to another is done by clicking buttons on the current dialog. This topic describes the dialog panels that compose the top window.

Top Dialog

The **Top Dialog** is the dialog panel that is initially shown in the top window when the Graphic Editor applet is started. Access to other dialog panels of the top window is from this dialog.

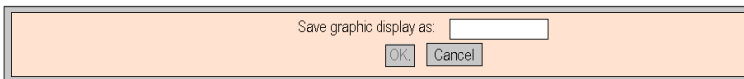


The controls of the **Top Dialog** provide the following functions:

- **Drop-down List.** The drop-down list box shows graphic display files that have been saved to the Web server module and are available for retrieval. When you select a graphic display from this list, the graphic display currently in the window is replaced with the selected one. If the current graphic display has been modified since it was last saved, you are asked for confirmation that the changes are to be discarded. If the special entry <new> is chosen from the list, the display window is cleared and a new graphic display can be created.
- **Save.** The **Save** button makes the **Save Dialog** visible. This button is disabled until you have entered a correct write-enabled password.
- **Delete.** The **Delete...** button makes the **Delete Dialog** visible. This button is disabled until you have entered a correct password, or if the current graphic display has not yet been saved.
- **Edit.** The **Edit...** button makes the **Edit Dialog** visible.
- **Password.** The **Password...** button makes the **Password Dialog** visible.
- **Information display area.** The information display area shows the name and version of the Concept, PL7, or Control Expert program that is running in the connected PLC.

Save Dialog

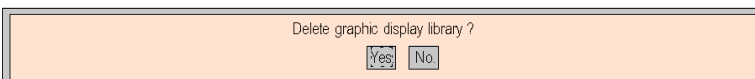
The **Save Dialog** allows you to save the current graphic display.



When the **Save Dialog** is presented, the name of the current graphic display is shown in the dialog's text field. If the current graphic display has not been saved (i.e., a "new" graphic display), then the text field is blank. Once you have either accepted the current name (with a "save" operation) or provided a new name (with a "save as" operation), then you can click the **OK** button to save the contents of the current graphic display to the Web server module. The **Cancel** button will cause the **Top Dialog** to be shown again, with no action being taken.

Delete Dialog

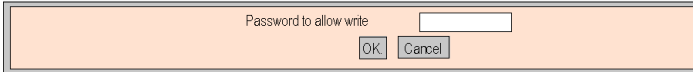
The **Delete Dialog** allows you to delete the current graphic display.



If you click **Yes**, the existing graphic display window is cleared and the graphics file on the Web server module is deleted. Clicking **No** will cause the **Top Dialog** to be shown again, with no action being taken.

Password Dialog

The **Password Dialog** allows you to enter the password that enables those user functions that modify graphic display files or PLC run-time data values.

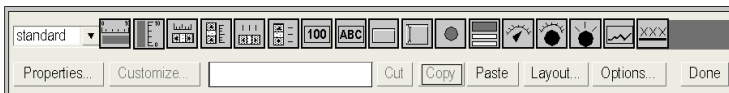


If you enter the correct password and click **OK**, then you will be allowed to save and delete the current graphic display. Correct entry of the password also permits you to write new values to the PLC (via those graphic objects that support writing values to a PLC, if any). Clicking **OK** when the text field is empty clears the current password permissions (if there are any). The **Cancel** button redisplayes the **Top Dialog** without changing the current password permissions.

Edit Dialog

The **Edit Dialog** allows you to select a graphic object for placement in the display window, and provides access to graphic editing functions. The available graphic objects are presented in a set of palettes, with one palette visible at a time. There are two palettes.

The standard palette:



The extended palette:



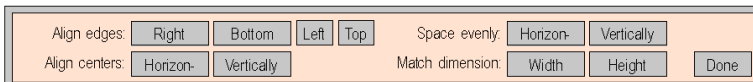
The controls of the **Edit Dialog** provide the following functions:

- The **Drop-down List Box** shows the set of available palettes. When you select the name of a palette from the list, the graphic objects in that palette appear in the palette display area of the dialog.

- The **Palette** shows the graphic objects in the current palette. An icon depicts each graphic object's type (meter, button, etc.). When you click any icon in the palette, a graphic object of the corresponding type is selected for insertion. If you click in an open area of the display window while the Graphic Editor is in "insert mode," an instance of the selected graphic object is inserted into the graphic display.
- The **Information Area** shows the name and size of the graphic object that is currently selected.
- The **Cut** button causes the currently selected graphic object(s) to be removed from the graphic display and saved to a buffer (i.e., an internal clipboard), replacing the existing contents of the buffer.
- The **Copy** button causes the currently selected graphic object(s) to be copied to the buffer, replacing the existing contents of the buffer.
- The **Paste** button causes the content of the clipboard to be inserted into the upper left corner of the graphic display. The pasted graphic objects can then be moved to the desired location in the display.
- The **Properties** button displays the currently selected graphic object's Property Sheet.
- The **Customize** button displays the currently selected object's Customizer, page 274 (if the graphic object has one).
- The **Layout** button makes the **Layout Dialog** visible.
- The **Options** button makes the **Options Dialog** visible.
- The **Done** button makes the **Top Dialog** visible again.

Layout Dialog

The **Layout Dialog** allows you to change the position and size of a group of graphic objects.



The controls of the **Layout Dialog** provide the following functions:

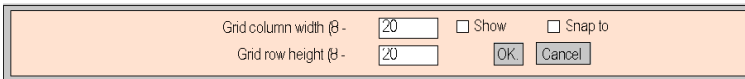
- For aligning the edges of graphic objects, the **Right**, **Bottom**, **Left**, and **Top** buttons move the selected graphic objects so that their specified sides are at the same position. Select at least two graphic objects to enable these buttons.
- For aligning the center lines of graphic objects, the **Horizontally** and **Vertically** buttons move the selected graphic objects so that their horizontal or vertical center lines, respectively, are at the same position. Select at least two graphic objects to enable these buttons.

- For positioning graphic objects so that they are evenly spaced, the **Horizontally** and **Vertically** buttons move the selected graphic objects so that either the horizontal or vertical spacing between the objects is the same. Select at least three graphic objects to enable these buttons.
- To automatically size graphic objects, use the **Width** and **Height** buttons to re-size the currently selected graphic objects so that either the widths or heights, respectively, of the objects match. Select at least two graphic objects to enable these buttons.
- The **Done** button makes the **Edit Dialog** visible again.

NOTE: For most layout operations (except **Space evenly**) one of the selected objects is considered the "reference object" to which the other selected objects adjust for their new position or dimension. For example, when the "Width" button is pressed, the selected objects have their widths changed to match that of the reference object. The reference object is differentiated from the other selected objects by making its selection box a different color than the others.

Options Dialog

The **Options Dialog** allows you to change the settings related to a grid that can be drawn in the display window. The grid is solely for assistance in editing a graphic display and is shown only when the Graphic Editor is in "edit mode." Edit mode starts when you switch to the **Edit Dialog** and ends when you return to the **Top Dialog**.



The **Options Dialog** controls provide the following functions:

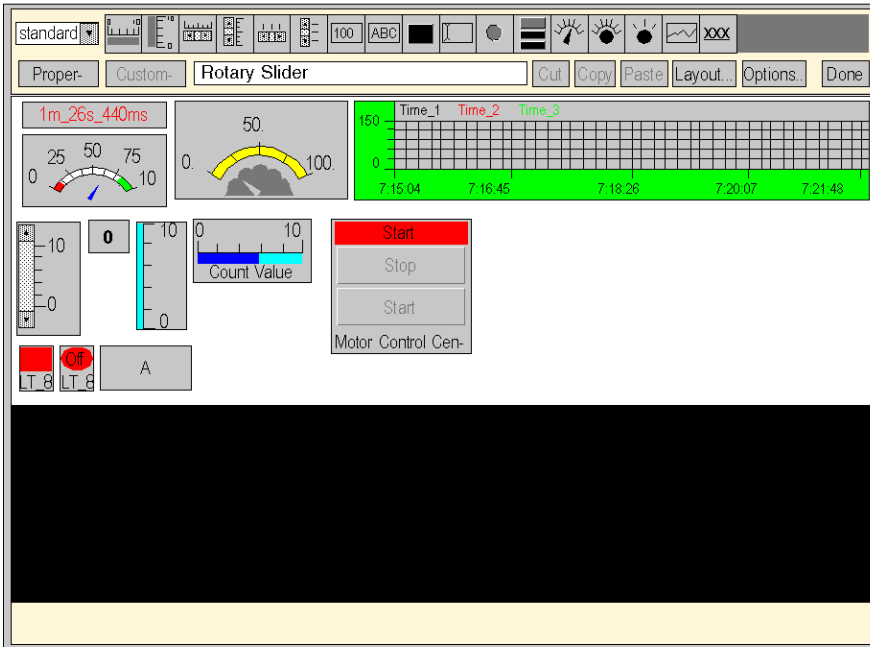
- The cell size of the grid can be changed by the entering the grid's column width and row height in the dialog's text fields.
- If the **Show grid** check-box is checked, the grid is drawn; otherwise, no grid is shown.
- If the **Snap to grid** check-box is checked, then, when you change the size or position of a graphic object, the changed coordinate(s) or dimension(s) is automatically adjusted to coincide with a grid point.
- The **OK** button causes the current option settings to become active, and the **Edit Dialog** to be shown again.
- The **Cancel** button causes the **Edit Dialog** to be shown again, with no option settings being changed.

Display Window User Functions

Overview

The user functions available from the **Graphic Editor** display window allow you to select, move, and size objects. Moving and sizing operations require that your first select those graphic object(s) that you want to modify. A selected object is indicated by its surrounding selection box; an unselected or deselected object has no surrounding selection box.

The figure below shows the **Graphic Editor** display.



Selecting Graphic Objects

A graphic object's selection state (selected/deselected) can be set via the following user actions:

- A single graphic object can be selected by simply clicking on it with a mouse. If any other objects are currently selected, they will be deselected.

- Multiple graphic objects can be selected with a selection box in the display window. If you press a mouse button in an open area of the display window (i.e., not on a graphic object) and drag the mouse without releasing it, you will see a dotted outline box. One corner of the box is fixed where the mouse button was initially pressed while the opposite corner tracks the current mouse position. When the mouse button is released, every object that intersects the selection box is selected. Objects outside the box are deselected.
- A graphic object's selection state can be toggled between selected and deselected without affecting the selection state of other objects by pressing the CTRL key when clicking on the object. With this action, graphic objects can be individually added or removed from the group of selected objects.
- A graphic object can be selected without affecting the selection state of any other objects by pressing the SHIFT key when clicking on the object. When an object is selected this way, it becomes the *reference object* (see [Layout Dialog Top Window User Functions, page 267](#)) for the group of selected objects. The primary purpose of this action is to change the reference object in a group of selected objects prior to invoking one of the **Layout** operations.
- Previously selected graphic objects can be deselected by clicking the mouse in an open area of the display window, that is, not on a graphic object.

Sizing Graphic Objects

A graphic object's size can be changed by first selecting it, then using the mouse to change the size of the object's selection box. As you move the mouse over an object's selection box, the mouse pointer changes to reflect the type of sizing operation to be performed. If you press a mouse button while the mouse is over an object's selection box and drag the mouse without releasing it, a dotted outline box appears. When the mouse button is released, the object's size is changed to match the size of the outline. There are eight possible sizing actions depending on which part of an object's selection box is dragged. Each corner of the box will allow only its adjacent sides to move; each side of the box will allow only that side to move.

Moving Graphic Objects

A graphic object can be moved in the display window with the mouse. If you press a mouse button while the cursor is over an object and drag without releasing the button, then a selection box will be shown. When the mouse button is released, the object moves to the location of the selection box.

Multiple graphic objects can be moved by first selecting the objects to be moved, and then dragging the entire group of objects in the same way a single object is moved. While a group of objects is moved, a selection box is shown for each object in the group.

Setting Graphic Object Properties

You can set a graphic object's properties via the Property Sheet. If the Property Sheet is visible, the properties of the selected graphic object are presented for editing. Display the Property Sheet by pressing the **Properties...** button or by double-clicking the mouse anywhere on the selected object in the display window.

Customizing Complex Graphic Objects

Some complex graphic objects have a very large number of properties. Configuring such an object with the Property Sheet can be cumbersome. An available Customizer can ease the configuration of complex graphic objects. A Customizer is a dialog window designed specifically to configure its associated graphic object. When the Graphic Editor detects that a selected graphic object has a Customizer, it will enable the **Customizer...** button, which brings up the graphic object's Customizer. When you double-click on a graphic object that is associated with a Customizer, the Customizer comes up (instead of the Property Sheet). If a graphic object is associated with a Customizer, the only item in the Property Sheet is its name.

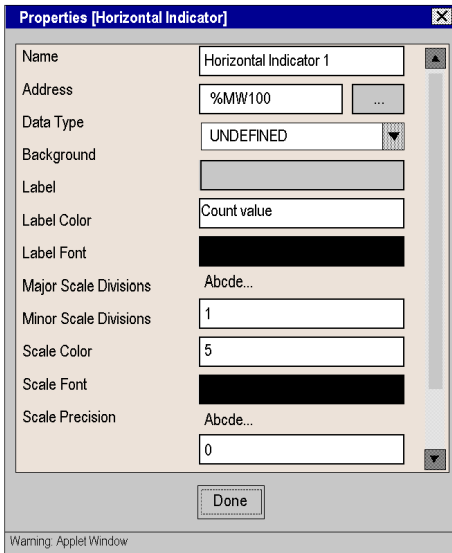
Display Background Image

A Graphic Editor display has a **Background Image** property that can be used to designate an image as the display's background. The image can be a GIF or JPEG file. File locations are relative to the Embedded Server's /wwwroot directory. For example, if the image "cool.gif" was put in the Embedded Server's /wwwroot/images directory, then the Background Image property should be set to /images/cool.gif.

Property Sheet

Overview

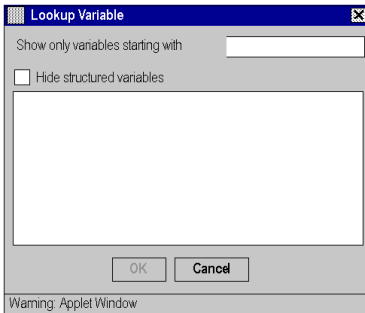
The Property Sheet is a "floating" (non-modal) dialog that shows the configurable properties of the currently selected graphic object:



The properties of a graphic object are specific to an object's type. The properties are presented in a scrollable list, with the name and the value of each property listed. The Graphic Editor comes with a description of graphic objects, page 278.

Lookup Dialog

For each of the graphic objects provided with the Graphic Editor, a property editor is provided for its **Address** property. This editor not only allows you to directly enter the address of a Quantum/Premium/Micro register (or Concept/PL7/Control Expert variable name), but also provides access to the **Lookup Dialog**. This dialog allows you to pick a Concept/PL7/Control Expert symbol (variable) name from a list of symbolized variables that have been "Web enabled" by the FactoryCast Configurator:



NOTE: The variables window is empty because it is not possible to access variables in this manner at this time.

Security

Three security elements are provided to help you protect your data:

- The HTML page containing the Graphic Editor applet has been placed in the *secure* directory on the Web module, then the Web browser user is asked for a password before being allowed to download the HTML page.
- The **Password** dialog box enables you to save/delete files or to transfer data values. This dialog is password protected. When you transfer data values, the Graphic Editor reinforces the read-only mode by deactivating the user commands related to graphic objects.
- Web Designer for FactoryCast allows you to specify that an item is read-only. The **Graphic Editor** will enforce the read-only attribute of a symbol (variable) or address by rejecting any request to set a new value for the data item, and informing the user in the **Graphic Editor** message window.

⚠ WARNING

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

- Do not use graphic objects where a communication interruption with the FactoryCast module can result in unintended equipment operation.
- Do not use graphic objects in safety-critical machine functions.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

For example, you have programmed a pushbutton object to jog a motor when the button is pressed and to stop jogging when the button is released. If communications are interrupted while the button is pressed, the motor will continue to jog even when the button is released. Graphic objects should not be used to control situations such as this unless other interlock methods are installed in the system.

Graphic Editor Applet Parameters

Overview

Three applet parameters can customize the behavior of the **Graphic Editor**. Applet parameters are specified with <PARAM> tags within the <APPLET> tag in the Graphic Editor's HTML page. The parameters recognized by the **Graphic Editor** applet are:

- **LOAD**: This parameter tells the **Graphic Editor** to auto-load a specific graphics file when it starts. If the file does not exist, a message appears. If this parameter is not provided in the <APPLET> tag, then a file is not auto-loaded at startup and you have to select an initial graphics file from the list provided by the **Graphic Editor**.
- **MODE**: This parameter tells the **Graphic Editor** whether to startup in its normal "Edit Mode" or in a special "View Mode." When started in view mode, the **Graphic Editor** shows only its display window. When this parameter is used with the LOAD parameter, a Web site can be designed using HTML pages that are dedicated to specific graphic displays. No explicit selection of graphic files is required by a user, providing more typical HMI screen behavior. The possible values for this parameter are:
 - **EDIT** (default value): The **Graphic Editor** starts up in its normal Edit Mode.
 - **VIEW_RO**: The **Graphic Editor** starts up in read-only view mode. The Web browser user will not be allowed to send data values to the PLC.
 - **VIEW_RW**: The **Graphic Editor** starts up in read/write view mode. The Web browser user will be allowed to send data values to the PLC after entering the write-access password.

- **AUTO_LOGIN**: This parameter tells the **Graphic Editor** to automatically enter the password that is required to permit writing to the PLC. If the **MODE** parameter is set to **VIEW_RW** or **EDIT**, then setting this parameter to **TRUE** will cause the **Graphic Editor** to allow writing to the PLC without requiring the user to enter the password. The possible values for this parameter are **FALSE** (default) and **TRUE**.

Example

The following is an example of an applet tag for the **Graphic Editor** that causes it to start up in view mode while automatically loading a graphics file named **UNIT_1**. In this case, the Web browser allows you to send values to the PLC via any graphic objects that support sending values (assuming you have entered the write-access password).

```
<APPLET codebase="/classes"
archive="SAComm.jar,GDE.jar,Widgets.jar"
code="com.schneiderautomation.gde.GdeApplet"
width="700" height="514">
<PARAM name="LOAD" value="UNIT_1">
<PARAM name="MODE" value="VIEW_RW">
<PARAM name="AUTO_LOGIN" value="FALSE">
</APPLET>
```

Graphic Objects

Overview

The set of graphic objects provided with the **Graphic Editor** supports the construction of graphic displays that mimic conventional instrument panels. The data monitoring and control objects have built-in communication capabilities and are designed as standalone graphic objects.

Note, however, that if communication to the device linked to the graphic object is interrupted, the object becomes inoperative without informing the end device.

▲ WARNING

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

- Do not use graphic objects where a communication interruption with the FactoryCast module can result in unintended equipment operation.
- Do not use graphic objects in safety-critical machine functions.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

For example, you have programmed a pushbutton object to jog a motor when the button is pressed and to stop jogging when the button is released. If communications are interrupted while the button is pressed, the motor will continue to jog even when the button is released. Graphic objects should not be used to control situations such as this unless other interlock methods are installed in the system.

Additionally, each object in the **Graphic Editor** set is available in an applet version to support customers that want to put several simple applets on a single HTML page. When used in conjunction with `LiveBeanApplet`, the **Graphic Editor** graphic objects can be used in the same way as the `LiveLabelApplet`.

This topic describes standard graphic objects and their properties.

Horizontal Indicator

A Horizontal Indicator provides an analog representation of the value of a symbol (variable) or direct address in a PLC. It is a horizontal bar that represents the value as a percentage of its range in engineering units. Optionally, a digital indication of the value can be shown in the center of the bar area.

The following table describes the properties for the Horizontal Indicator:

Property	Description	Limits
Name	The name of the graphic object	
Address	The direct address or the name of a symbol (variable) to monitor	See Note 1, Notes, page 295
Data Type	The data type of the direct address or symbol (variable)	See Note 2, Notes, page 295
Background	The background color of the graphic object	
Label	The label to be displayed as part of the graphic object	
Label Color	The color of the label	
Label Font	The font used on the label	
Major Scale Divisions	The number of major (labeled) scale divisions	0 to 100
Minor Scale Divisions	The number of minor (unlabeled) scale divisions	0 to 100
Scale Color	The color of the scale and its labels	
Scale Font	The font used on scale labels	
Scale Precision	The number of fractional digits to be shown for scale labels (set to -1 to use a general exponential format)	-1 to 6
Maximum EU Value	The maximum value, in engineering units, of the direct address or symbol (variable)	

Property	Description	Limits
Minimum EU Value	The minimum value, in engineering units, of the direct address or symbol (variable)	
Maximum PLC Value	The maximum raw (unscaled) value of the direct address or symbol (variable) in the PLC	See Note 3, Notes, page 295
Minimum PLC Value	The minimum raw (unscaled) value of the direct address or symbol (variable) in the PLC	See Note 3, Notes, page 295
Value Visible	Indicates whether a digital display of the scaled value is to be shown	
Value Font	The font for the digital display of the value (if shown)	
Bar Background	The background color of the bar indicator area	
Bar Color	The color of the indicator bar (when the scaled value within High/Low limits)	
High High Limit Value	The value in engineering units for the 'High High' limit	
High High Limit Color	The color of the indicator bar when the scaled value is greater than the 'High High' limit	
High Limit Value	The value in engineering units for the 'High' limit	
High Limit Color	The color of the indicator bar when the scaled value is greater than the 'High' limit	
Low Limit Value	The value in engineering units for the 'Low' limit	
Low Limit Color	The color of the indicator bar when the scaled value is less than the 'Low' limit	
Low Low Limit Value	The value in engineering units for the 'Low Low' limit	
Low Low Limit Color	The color of the indicator bar when the scaled value is less than the 'Low Low' limit	
Limit Deadband	The deadband (as percentage of EU range) to apply to High/Low limit checking	0 to 10
Border Width	The width (in pixels) of the graphic object border	0 to 32
Border Color	The color of the graphic object border	
PLC Value	A simulated, raw (unscaled) input value for testing the graphic object	See Note 3, Notes, page 295

Vertical Indicator

A Vertical Indicator provides an analog representation of the value of a symbol (variable) or direct address in a PLC. It is a vertical bar that represents the value as a percentage of its range in engineering units.

The following table describes the properties of the Vertical Indicator:

Property	Description	Limits
Name	The name of the graphic object	
Address	The direct address or the name of a symbol (variable) to monitor	See Note 1, Notes, page 295
Data Type	The data type of the direct address or symbol (variable)	See Note 2, Notes, page 295
Background	The background color of the graphic object	
Label	The label to be displayed as part of the graphic object	
Label Color	The color of the label	
Label Font	The font used for the label	
Major Scale Divisions	The number of major (labeled) scale divisions	0 to 100
Minor Scale Divisions	The number of minor (unlabeled) scale divisions	0 to 100
Scale Color	The color of the scale and its labels	
Scale Font	The font used for scale labels	
Scale Precision	The number of fractional digits to be shown for scale labels (set to -1 to use a general exponential format)	-1 to 6
Maximum EU Value	The maximum value, in engineering units, of the direct address or symbol (variable)	
Minimum EU Value	The minimum value, in engineering units, of the direct address or symbol (variable)	
Maximum PLC Value	The maximum raw (unscaled) value of the direct address or symbol (variable) in the PLC	See Note 3, Notes, page 295
Minimum PLC Value	The minimum raw (unscaled) value of the direct address or symbol (variable) in the PLC	See Note 3, Notes, page 295
Bar Background	The background color of the bar indicator area	
Bar Color	The color of the indicator bar (when the scaled value within High/Low limits)	
High High Limit Value	The value in engineering units for the 'High High' limit	
High High Limit Color	The color of the indicator bar when the scaled value is greater than the 'High High' limit	
High Limit Value	The value of the 'High' limit in engineering units	
High Limit Color	The color of the indicator bar when scaled value is greater than the 'High' limit	
Low Limit Value	The value of the 'Low' limit in engineering units	

Property	Description	Limits
Low Limit Color	The color of the indicator bar when the scaled value is less than the 'Low' limit	
Low Low Limit Value	The value of the 'Low Low' limit in engineering units	
Low Low Limit Color	The color of the indicator bar when the scaled value is less than the 'Low Low' limit	
Limit Deadband	The deadband (as percentage of EU range) to apply to High/Low limit checking	0 to 10
Border Width	The width (in pixels) of the graphic object border	0 to 32
Border Color	The color of the graphic object border	
PLC Value	A simulated, raw (unscaled) input value for testing the graphic object	See Note 3, Notes, page 295

Horizontal or Vertical Slider

A Horizontal or Vertical Slider provides an analog representation of the value of a symbol (variable) or direct address in a PLC. It is a scroll bar with a "thumb" position that represents the value as a percentage of its range in engineering units. With the mouse, you can change the value of the scroll bar, sending a new value to the PLC.

The following table describes the properties for the Horizontal or Vertical Slider:

Property	Description	Limits
Name	The name of the graphic object	
Address	The direct address or the name of a symbol (variable) to monitor	See Note 1, Notes, page 295
Data Type	The data type of the direct address or symbol (variable)	See Note 2, Notes, page 295
Background	The background color of the graphic object	
Label	The label to be displayed as part of the graphic object	
Label Color	The color of the label	
Label Font	The font used for the label	
Major Scale Divisions	The number of major (labeled) scale divisions	0 to 100
Minor Scale Divisions	The number of minor (unlabeled) scale divisions	0 to 100
Scale Color	The color of the scale and its labels	
Scale Font	The font used for scale labels	

Property	Description	Limits
Scale Precision	The number of fractional digits to be shown for scale labels (set to -1 to use a general exponential format)	-1 to 6
Maximum EU Value	The maximum value, in engineering units, of the direct address or symbol (variable)	
Minimum EU Value	The minimum value, in engineering units, of the direct address or symbol (variable)	
Maximum PLC Value	The maximum raw (unscaled) value of the direct address or symbol (variable) in the PLC	See Note 3, Notes, page 295
Minimum PLC Value	The minimum raw (unscaled) value of the direct address or symbol (variable) in the PLC	See Note 3, Notes, page 295
Block Increment	The amount that the scaled value should change when the scroll bar scroll area is clicked	
Unit Increment	The amount that the scaled value should change when the scroll bar arrow buttons are clicked	
Border Width	The width (in pixels) of the graphic object's border	0 to 32
Border Color	The color of the graphic object border	

Horizontal or Vertical Selector

A Horizontal or Vertical Selector allows you select from a set of choices. When a selection is made, the value corresponding to the choice is sent to the PLC. The choices are shown as labels of a "scale," with the current selection indicated by the position of the "thumb" of a scroll bar.

The following table describes the properties of the Horizontal or Vertical Selector:

Property	Description	Limits
Name	The name of the graphic object	
Address	The direct address (or the name of a symbol (variable)) to monitor	See Note 1, Notes, page 295
Data Type	The data type of the direct address or symbol (variable)	See Note 2, Notes, page 295
Background	The background color for the graphic object	
Choices	The choices for the selector. Each choice is given as a 'label=value' entry (when you select 'label,' 'value' is sent to PLC).	Minimum of two choices required
Label	The label to be displayed as part of the graphic object	

Property	Description	Limits
Label Color	The color of the label	
Label Font	The font used for the label	
Scale Visible	Indicates whether a "scale," labeled with the choices, is to be shown	
Scale Color	The color of the scale and its labels	
Scale Font	The font used for scale labels	
Border Width	The width (in pixels) of the graphic object border	0 to 32
Border Color	The color of the graphic object border	

Digital Indicator

A Digital Indicator provides a numeric representation of the value of a symbol (variable) or direct address in a PLC. The value can be shown in various formats, and can be made to change color when a preset high or low limit is exceeded.

The following table describes the properties of the Digital Indicator:

Property	Description	Limits
Name	The name of the graphic object	
Address	The direct address or the name of a symbol (variable) to monitor	See Note 1, Notes, page 295
Data Type	The data type of the direct address or symbol (variable)	See Note 2, Notes, page 295
Background	The background color of the graphic object	
Label	The label to be displayed as part of the graphic object	
Label Color	The color of the label	
Label Font	The font used for the label	
Value Format	The format (decimal, hex, etc.) to use in displaying the scaled value	
Value Precision	The number of fractional digits to be shown for the scaled value (set to -1 to use a general exponential format)	-1 to 6
Value Background	The background color of the value display area	
Value Color	The text color for the digital display of the value	
Value Font	The font used for the digital display of the value	

Property	Description	Limits
Units	The label for the value engineering units (appended to the numerical display of the value)	
Maximum EU Value	The maximum value, in engineering units, of the direct address or symbol (variable)	
Minimum EU Value	The minimum value, in engineering units, of the direct address or symbol (variable)	
Maximum PLC Value	The maximum raw (unscaled) value of the direct address or symbol (variable) in the PLC	See Note 3, Notes, page 295
Minimum PLC Value	The minimum raw (unscaled) value of the direct address or symbol (variable) in the PLC	See Note 3, Notes, page 295
High High Limit Value	The value of the 'High High' limit in engineering units	
High High Limit Color	The color of the indicator bar when the scaled value is greater than the 'High High' limit	
High Limit Value	The value of the 'High' limit in engineering units	
High Limit Color	The color of the indicator bar when the scaled value is greater than the 'High' limit	
Low Limit Value	The value of the 'Low' limit in engineering units	
Low Limit Color	The color for the indicator bar when scaled value is less than the 'Low' limit	
Low Low Limit Value	The value of the 'Low Low' limit in engineering units	
Low Low Limit Color	The color of the indicator bar when the scaled value is less than the 'Low Low' limit	
Limit Deadband	The deadband (as percentage of EU range) to apply to High/Low limit checking	0 to 10
Border Width	The width (in pixels) of the graphic object border	0 to 32
Border Color	The color of the graphic object border	
PLC Value	A simulated, raw (unscaled) input value for testing the graphic object	See Note 3

Message Display

A Message Display shows a text message based on the value of a symbol (variable) or direct address in a PLC. For each specified message, a specified value triggers its display.

The following table describes the properties of the Message Display:

Property	Description	Limits
Name	The name of the graphic object	
Address	The direct address or the name of a symbol (variable) to monitor	See Note 1, Notes, page 295
Data Type	The data type of the direct address or symbol (variable)	See Note 2, Notes, page 295
Background	The background color of the graphic object	
Messages	The set of messages to display. Each message is given as a 'value=text' entry (when the PLC value equals 'value,' 'text' is displayed as the message).	Minimum of one message required
Message Background	The background color of the message display area	
Message Color	The color of the message text	
Message Font	The font used for the message text	
Label	The label to be displayed as part of the graphic object	
Label Color	The color of the label	
Label Font	The font used for the label	
Border Width	The width (in pixels) of the graphic object border	0 to 32
Border Color	The color of the graphic object border	
PLC Value	A simulated input value for testing the graphic object	See Note 3, Notes, page 295

Push Button

A Push Button allows you to send preset value(s) to a PLC when clicked with the mouse.

The following table describes the properties of the Push Button:

Property	Description	Limits
Name	The name of the graphic object	
Address	The direct address or the name of a symbol (variable) to monitor	See Note 1, Notes, page 295
Data Type	The data type of the direct address or symbol (variable)	See Note 2, Notes, page 295
Background	The background color of the graphic object	
Values	The value(s) to send to the PLC	See Note 4, Notes, page 295

Property	Description	Limits
Reset Values	The value(s) to send to the PLC after the reset delay time has expired. If no reset values are provided, no reset action will occur.	
Reset Delay	The delay time (in milliseconds) that the Push Button should wait after sending the value(s) to the PLC before sending the reset value(s).	0-2000
Label	The label to be displayed as part of the graphic object	
Label Color	The color of the label	
Label Font	The font used for the label	
Button Label	The text label for the button	
Button Background	The color of the button	0 to 100
Button Label Color	The color of the button label	
Button Label Font	The font used for the button label	
Border Width	The width (in pixels) of the graphic object border	0 to 32
Border Color	The color of the graphic object border	

Direct Output Station

The Direct Output Station allows you to enter a numeric value in a text field directly with the keyboard. When the entered value is within preset high and low limits, a **Set** button is enabled. In this case, the entered value will be sent to the PLC when you press either the **Set** button or the ENTER key (if the input field has keyboard input focus).

The following table describes the properties of the Direct Output Station:

Property	Description	Limits
Name	The name of the graphic object	
Address	The direct address or the name of a symbol (variable) to monitor	See Note 1, Notes, page 295
Data Type	The data type of the direct address or symbol (variable)	See Note 2, Notes, page 295
Background	The background color of the graphic object	
Label	The label to be displayed as part of the graphic object	
Label Color	The color of the label	
Label Font	The font used for the label	

Property	Description	Limits
Maximum EU Value	The maximum value, in engineering units, of the direct address or symbol (variable)	
Minimum EU Value	The minimum value, in engineering units, of the direct address or symbol (variable)	
Maximum PLC Value	The maximum raw (unscaled) value of the direct address or symbol (variable) in the PLC	See Note 3, Notes, page 295
Minimum PLC Value	The minimum raw (unscaled) value of the direct address or symbol (variable) in the PLC	See Note 3, Notes, page 295
Maximum Input	The maximum value, in engineering units, that is valid for the entered input value	
Minimum Input	The minimum value, in engineering units, that is valid for the entered input value	
Border Width	The width (in pixels) of the graphic object border	0 to 32
Border Color	The color of the graphic object border	

Indicator Light

The Indicator Light provides a dual-state indication of the value of a symbol (variable) or direct address in a PLC. Unless the **Input Inverted** property is set to **TRUE**, an input value of zero is deemed **OFF** and a non-zero value is deemed **ON**. If the **Flash Interval** property is set to greater than zero, the light will flash while the input value is on.

The following table describes the properties of the Indicator Light:

Property	Description	Limits
Name	The name of the graphic object	
Address	The direct address (or the name of a symbol (variable)) to monitor	See Note 1, Notes, page 295
Data Type	The data type of the direct address or symbol (variable)	See Note 2, Notes, page 295
Background	The background color of the graphic object	
Label	The label to be displayed as part of the graphic object	
Label Color	The color of the label	
Label Font	The font used for the label	
Off Word	The text to show when the input value is off	
Off Word Background	The background color of the light when the Off Word is shown	

Property	Description	Limits
Off Word Color	The color of the Off Word text	
Off Word Font	The font used for the Off Word text	
On Word	The text to show when the input value is on	
On Word Background	The background color of the light when the On Word is shown	
On Word Color	The color of the On Word font	
On Word Font	The font used for the On Word text	
Flash Interval	The flashing time period (in milliseconds) of the light when the input value is on. Set to zero for no flashing.	200 to 2000
Shape	The shape (circle, rectangle, etc.) of the light	
Input Inverted	If TRUE , inverts the input value. (Light will show the Off Word when input value is on.)	
Border Width	The width (in pixels) of the graphic object's border	0 to 32
Border Color	The color of the graphic object's border	
PLC Value	A simulated input value for testing the graphic object	See Note 3, Notes, page 295

Motor Control Station

The Motor Control Station is designed to mimic the typical start/stop push button station that is often used to control motors. This graphic object is essentially a composite of two push buttons and an indicator light. A Customizer is provided to make it easier to set the object properties. Most properties (except Name) are set with its Customizer, not with the **Graphic Editor** Property Sheet.

The following table describes the properties of the Motor Control Station:

Property	Description	Limits
Name	The name of the graphic object	
Background	The background color of the graphic object	
Label	The label to be displayed as part of the graphic object	
Label Color	The color of the label	
Label Font	The font used for the label	
Border Width	The width (in pixels) of the graphic object border	0 to 32
Border Color	The color of the graphic object border	

Property	Description	Limits
Indicator Light	Same properties as the Indicator Light graphic object, excluding the shared properties listed above	
Top Push Button	Same properties as the Push Button graphic object, excluding the shared properties listed above	
Bottom Push Button	Same properties as the Push Button graphic object, excluding the shared properties listed above	

Analog Meter

An Analog Meter provides an analog representation of the value of a symbol (variable) or direct address in a PLC. It is represented as a pointer on a circular dial; its position indicates the value as a percentage of its range in engineering units. You can set the size of the meter circular dial (degrees sweep of a circle), the colors of the dial, and the style of the pointer.

The following table describes the properties of the Analog Meter:

Property	Description	Limits
Name	The name of the graphic object	
Address	The direct address or the name of a symbol (variable) to monitor	See Note 1, Notes, page 295
Data Type	The data type of the direct address or symbol (variable)	See Note 2, Notes, page 295
Background	The background color of the graphic object	
Label	The label to be displayed as part of the graphic object	
Label Color	The color of the label	
Label Font	The font used for the label	
Major Scale Divisions	The number of major (labeled) scale divisions	0 to 100
Minor Scale Divisions	The number of minor (unlabeled) scale divisions	0 to 100
Scale Color	The color of the scale and its labels	
Scale Font	The font used for scale labels	
Scale Precision	The number of fractional digits to be shown for scale labels (set to -1 to use a general exponential format)	-1 to 6
Maximum EU Value	The maximum value, in engineering units, of the direct address or symbol (variable)	
Minimum EU Value	The minimum value, in engineering units, of the direct address or symbol (variable)	

Property	Description	Limits
Maximum PLC Value	The maximum raw (unscaled) value of the direct address or symbol (variable) in the PLC	See Note 3, Notes, page 295
Minimum PLC Value	The minimum raw (unscaled) value of the direct address or symbol (variable) in the PLC	See Note 3, Notes, page 295
Dial Degrees Sweep	The amount of a circular arc to use for drawing the dial	60 to 300
Pointer Type	The type (needle, arrow head, etc.) of pointer to use	
Pointer Color	The color for the pointer	
Dial Color	The color of the dial (that part that is within the High/Low limits)	
High High Limit Value	The value of the 'High High' limit in engineering units	
High High Limit Color	The color of the indicator bar when the scaled value is greater than the 'High High' limit	
High Limit Value	The value of the 'High' limit in engineering units	
High Limit Color	The color of the indicator bar when the scaled value is greater than the 'High' limit	
Low Limit Value	The value of the 'Low' limit in engineering units	
Low Limit Color	The color of the indicator bar when the scaled value is less than the 'Low' limit	
Low Low Limit Value	The value of the 'Low Low' limit in engineering units	
Low Low Limit Color	The color of the indicator bar when the scaled value is less than the 'Low Low' limit	
Border Width	The width (in pixels) of the graphic object border	0 to 32
Border Color	The color of the graphic object border	
PLC Value	A simulated, raw (unscaled) input value for testing the graphic object	See Note 3, Notes, page 295

Rotary Slider

A Rotary Slider provides an analog representation of the value of a symbol (variable) or direct address in a PLC. It is represented as a knob on a circular dial; its position indicates the value as a percentage of its range in engineering units. The dial size and knob color can be set. With the mouse, you can change the position of the knob, sending a new value to the PLC.

The following table describes the properties of the Rotary Slider:

Property	Description	Limits
Name	The name of the graphic object	
Address	The direct address or the name of a symbol (variable) to monitor	See Note 1, Notes, page 295
Data Type	The data type of the direct address or symbol (variable)	See Note 2, Notes, page 295
Background	The background color of the graphic object	
Label	The label to be displayed as part of the graphic object	
Label Color	The color of the label	
Label Font	The font used for the label	
Major Scale Divisions	The number of major (labeled) scale divisions	0 to 100
Minor Scale Divisions	The number of minor (unlabeled) scale divisions	0 to 100
Scale Color	The color of the scale and its labels	
Scale Font	The font used for scale labels	
Scale Precision	The number of fractional digits to be shown for scale labels (set to -1 to use a general exponential format)	-1 to 6
Dial Degrees Sweep	The amount of a circular arc to use for drawing the dial	60 to 300
Dial Color	The color of the dial	
Knob Color	The color used for the knob	
Maximum EU Value	The maximum value, in engineering units, of the direct address or symbol (variable)	
Minimum EU Value	The minimum value, in engineering units, of the direct address or symbol (variable)	
Maximum PLC Value	The maximum raw (unscaled) value of the direct address or symbol (variable) in the PLC	See Note 3, Notes, page 295
Minimum PLC Value	The minimum raw (unscaled) value of the direct address or symbol (variable) in the PLC	See Note 3, Notes, page 295
Border Width	The width (in pixels) of the graphic object border	0 to 32
Border Color	The color of the graphic object border	

Rotary Selector

A Rotary Selector allows you to select from a set of choices. When a selection is made, the value corresponding to the choice is sent to the PLC. The choices are shown as labels of a

"scale," with the current selection indicated by the position of the knob. The size of the circular dial (degrees sweep of a circle) and knob color can be set.

The following table describes the properties of the Rotary Selector:

Property	Description	Limits
Name	The name of the graphic object	
Address	The direct address or the name of a symbol (variable) to monitor	See Note 1, Notes, page 295
Data Type	The data type of the direct address or symbol (variable)	See Note 2, Notes, page 295
Background	The background color of the graphic object	
Choices	The choices for the selector. Each choice is given as a 'label=value' entry. (When you select 'label,' 'value' is sent to PLC.)	Minimum of two choices required
Label	The label to be displayed as part of the graphic object	
Label Color	The color of the label	
Label Font	The font used for the label	
Scale Visible	Indicates whether a "scale," labeled with the choices, is to be shown	
Scale Color	The color of the scale and its labels	
Scale Font	The font used for scale labels	
Dial Degrees Sweep	The amount of a circular arc to use for drawing the dial	60 to 300
Knob Color	The color of the knob	
Border Width	The width (in pixels) of the graphic object border	0 to 32
Border Color	The color of the graphic object border	

Trend Recorder

A Trend Recorder provides a continuous, time-based charting of the value of up to six symbol(s) (variables) or direct addresses in a PLC. A Trend Recorder emulates a strip-chart recorder, with the pens on the right, and the "paper" moving from right to left. A vertical scale can be shown on the left side of the chart for showing the range of the values being recorded, and a horizontal scale can be shown below the chart for showing the time span of the chart. You can set the rate at which the chart is updated, and the appearance of the chart.

A Customizer is provided to make it easier to set this object properties. Most properties (except Name) are set with its Customizer, not with the **Graphic Editor** Property Sheet.

The following table describes properties of the Trend Recorder. Properties available for each pen are described in the next table:

Property	Description	Limits
Name	The name of the graphic object	
Background	The background color of the graphic object	
Label	The label to be displayed as part of the graphic object	
Label Color	The color of the label	
Label Font	The font used for the label	
Major Scale Divisions	The number of major (labeled) scale divisions	0 to 100
Minor Scale Divisions	The number of minor (unlabeled) scale divisions	0 to 100
Scale Color	The color of the scale and its labels	
Scale Font	The font used for scale labels	
Scale Precision	The number of fractional digits to be shown for scale labels (set to -1 to use a general exponential format)	-1 to 6
Maximum EU Value	The maximum value, in engineering units, of the direct address or symbol (variable)	
Minimum EU Value	The minimum value, in engineering units, of the direct address or symbol (variable)	
Update Period	The update interval (in seconds) for the chart	0.5 to 120
Time Scale Divisions	The number of horizontal scale divisions	0 to 6
Chart Background	The color of the chart area	
Grid Color	The color of the grid drawn in the chart area	
Vertical Grid Divisions	The number of vertical divisions for the grid	0 to 100
Border Width	The width (in pixels) of the graphic object border	0 to 32
Border Color	The color of the graphic object border	

These Trend Recorder properties are available for each pen:

Property	Description	Limits
Address	The direct address (or the name of a symbol (variable)) to monitor	See Note 1, Notes, page 295
Data Type	The data type of the direct address or symbol (variable)	See Note 2, Notes, page 295
Maximum PLC Value	The maximum raw (unscaled) value of the direct address or symbol (variable) in the PLC	See Note 3, Notes, page 295

Property	Description	Limits
Minimum PLC Value	The minimum raw (unscaled) value of the direct address or symbol (variable) in the PLC	See Note 3, Notes, page 295
Pen Color	The color of the "pen" used to record the scaled value	
Pen Label	The label used to identify the pen	

Display Link

A Display Link is a special graphic object that allows you to switch to another graphic display by clicking on it with a mouse. To indicate that the object is a link to another display, the text label for the link is underlined and the mouse cursor changes to a hand icon when the mouse is moved over it. This object is especially useful when the **Graphic Editor** is used in **view mode**, where no drop-down list of graphic displays is available for selecting a display.

A Display Link can also be used as a hyperlink to an HTML file. If a URL is entered as the **Link Display Name**, the URL can be opened in a new browser window if you press the SHIFT key while clicking the link; otherwise, the existing browser window is replaced with the URL when the link is clicked.

If the **Link Display Name** is blank, then the **Label** will be shown as not underlined, and the displayed object becomes a simple text label.

The following table describes the properties of the Display Link:

Property	Description
Label	The label of the link
Link Display Name	The name of the graphic display to be loaded when the link is clicked, or a URL of a Web page
Label Color	The color of the label
Label Font	The font used for the label

Notes

These are the notes for this topic:

<p>1.</p>	<p>If the Address property of a graphic object is a direct address, the Data Type property is set to UNDEFINED, a default Data Type (BOOL, INT, DINT, or REAL, based on the implied size of the data value) is used. If the Address property is a symbol (variable) name, the Data Type property does not have to be specified and can be set to UNDEFINED. If, however, the Data Type property is specified for a symbol (variable), it must exactly match the symbol (variable) actual data type.</p> <p>If the Address property is a direct address for a discrete PLC reference (Quantum 0x/1x reference), set the Data Type property to BOOL. The Data Type property may be set to BOOL only for a discrete PLC reference.</p>																												
<p>2.</p>	<p>The meanings of the possible values of the Data Type property are:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Data Type</th> <th>Meaning</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>UNDEFINED</td> <td>no data type specified</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BOOL</td> <td>1-bit discrete (Boolean)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SHORT</td> <td>8-bit signed integer</td> </tr> <tr> <td>USHORT</td> <td>8-bit unsigned integer</td> </tr> <tr> <td>INT</td> <td>16-bit signed integer</td> </tr> <tr> <td>UINT</td> <td>16-bit unsigned integer</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DINT</td> <td>32-bit signed integer</td> </tr> <tr> <td>UDINT</td> <td>32-bit unsigned integer</td> </tr> <tr> <td>REAL</td> <td>32-bit IEEE floating point</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TIME</td> <td>32-bit unsigned integer (in milliseconds)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DATE</td> <td>Date (32-bit BCD)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TOD</td> <td>Time of Day (32-bit BCD)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DT</td> <td>Date and Time (64-bit BCD)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Data Type	Meaning	UNDEFINED	no data type specified	BOOL	1-bit discrete (Boolean)	SHORT	8-bit signed integer	USHORT	8-bit unsigned integer	INT	16-bit signed integer	UINT	16-bit unsigned integer	DINT	32-bit signed integer	UDINT	32-bit unsigned integer	REAL	32-bit IEEE floating point	TIME	32-bit unsigned integer (in milliseconds)	DATE	Date (32-bit BCD)	TOD	Time of Day (32-bit BCD)	DT	Date and Time (64-bit BCD)
Data Type	Meaning																												
UNDEFINED	no data type specified																												
BOOL	1-bit discrete (Boolean)																												
SHORT	8-bit signed integer																												
USHORT	8-bit unsigned integer																												
INT	16-bit signed integer																												
UINT	16-bit unsigned integer																												
DINT	32-bit signed integer																												
UDINT	32-bit unsigned integer																												
REAL	32-bit IEEE floating point																												
TIME	32-bit unsigned integer (in milliseconds)																												
DATE	Date (32-bit BCD)																												
TOD	Time of Day (32-bit BCD)																												
DT	Date and Time (64-bit BCD)																												
<p>3.</p>	<p>The limits for the Maximum PLC Value and Minimum PLC Value properties are the natural limits of the Data Type property that is set. A Data Type setting of UNDEFINED is treated as REAL with respect to its limit values.</p>																												
<p>4.</p>	<p>For a Push Button, provide at least one value. If the Address property is a symbol (variable) name, then only one value will ever be sent to the PLC, and any additional values are ignored. If the Address property is a direct address, then all of the values provided are sent to the PLC as an array of values starting at the specified direct address.</p>																												

Extended Graphic Objects

Overview

The extended graphic objects provided in the Graphic Editor are used to build graphic displays that mimic advanced graphic panels. All of the data monitoring and control objects have built-in communication capabilities and are designed as standalone graphic objects.

Note, however, that if communication to the device linked to the extended graphic object is interrupted, the object becomes inoperative without informing the end device.

▲ WARNING

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

- Do not use graphic objects where a communication interruption with the FactoryCast module can result in unintended equipment operation.
- Do not use graphic objects in safety-critical machine functions.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

For example, you have programmed a pushbutton object to jog a motor when the button is pressed and to stop jogging when the button is released. If communications are interrupted while the button is pressed, the motor will continue to jog even when the button is released. Graphic objects should not be used to control situations such as this unless other interlock methods are installed in the system.

Additionally, to support customers that want to put several simple applets on a single HTML page, each object in the Graphic Editor set is provided in an applet version. When used in conjunction with the `LiveBeanApplet`, Graphic Editor graphic objects can be used in the same way as the `LiveLabelApplet`.

ASCII Text Writer

The ASCII text writer is based on the message display widget. It allows you to input new text.

The properties of the ASCII text writer are:

Property	Description	Limits
Name	The name of the graphic object	
Address	The direct address or the name of a symbol (variable) to monitor	See Note 1, Notes, page 306

Property	Description	Limits
Max. Text Length	The maximum length of the text	
Text Color	The color of the text	
Text Font	The font of the text	
Swap Bytes	False if target order of bytes is same as PC one.	
Value	The text itself	

Bar Graph

A bar graph provides an analog representation of the value of a symbol (variable) or direct address in a PLC. It draws a vertical bar whose length is proportional to the value as a percentage of its range in engineering units.

The properties of the bar graph are:

Property	Description	Limits
Name	The name of the graphic object	
Address	The direct address or the name of a symbol (variable) to monitor	See Note 1, Notes, page 306
Data Type	The data type of the direct address or symbol (variable)	See Note 2, Notes, page 306
Background	The background color of the graphic object	
Label	The label to be displayed as part of the graphic object	
Label Color	The color of the label	
Label Font	The font used on the label	
Maximum EU Value	The maximum value, in engineering units, of the direct address or symbol (variable)	
Minimum EU Value	The minimum value, in engineering units, of the direct address or symbol (variable)	
Maximum PLC Value	The maximum raw (unscaled) value of the direct address or symbol (variable) in the PLC	See Note 3, Notes, page 306
Minimum PLC Value	The minimum raw (unscaled) value of the direct address or symbol (variable) in the PLC	See Note 3, Notes, page 306
Bar Background	The background color of the bar indicator area	
Bar Color	The color of the indicator bar (when scaled value within High/Low limits)	

Property	Description	Limits
High High Limit Value	The value of the High High limit in engineering units	
High High Limit Color	The color of the indicator bar when the scaled value is greater than the High High limit	
High Limit Value	The value of the High limit in engineering units	
High Limit Color	The color of the indicator bar when scaled value is greater than the High limit	
Low Limit Value	The value of the Low limit in engineering units	
Low Limit Color	The color of the indicator bar when the scaled value is less than the Low limit	
Low Low Limit Value	The value of the Low Low limit in engineering units	
Low Low Limit Color	The color of the indicator bar when the scaled value is less than the Low Low limit	
Limit Deadband	The deadband (as percentage of EU range) to apply to High/Low limit checking	0 to 10
Border Width	The width (in pixels) of the graphic object border	0 to 32
Border Color	The color of the graphic object border	
PLC Value	A simulated, raw (unscaled) input value for testing the graphic object	See Note 3, Notes, page 306

Bitmap

The bitmap widget displays a static bitmap on the screen.

The properties of the bitmap widget are:

Property	Description	Limits
Name	The name of the graphic object	
Background	The background color of the graphic object	See Note 1, Notes, page 306
Label	The label to be displayed as part of the graphic object	
Label Color	The color of the label	
Label Font	The font used for the label	
Border Width	The width (in pixels) of the graphic object border	

Property	Description	Limits
Border Color	The color of the graphic object border	
Bitmap Choices	Represents the filenames of the custom bitmaps to display. The default root path of the file location directory is /FLASH1/wwwroot; ":images/ thus refers to /FLASH1/wwwroot/images/ .	

Generic Bitmap

The generic bitmap widget lets you display one static bitmap for each distinct value of a PLC variable. It can be used to display dynamic animations, for instance the changing level in a tank.

The properties of the Generic Bitmap widget are:

Property	Description	Limits
Name	The name of the graphic object	
Address	The direct address or the name of a symbol (variable) to monitor	See Note 1, Notes, page 306
Data Type	The data type of the direct address or symbol (variable)	See Note 2, Notes, page 306
Background	The background color of the graphic object	See Note 1, Notes, page 306
Label	The label to be displayed as part of the graphic object	
Label Color	The color of the label	
Label Font	The font used for the label	
Bitmap Choices	Represents the filenames of the custom bitmaps to display. Clicking on this property opens a text editor that makes it possible to type the PLC value conditions and related bitmaps to display, such as "0:key.gif:images/" where 0 is the PLC value, "key.gif" the bitmap file related to the value, "images" the directory in which the file is located. The default root path of the file location directory is /FLASH1/wwwroot; images/ thus refers to /FLASH1/wwwroot/images/ .	
Border Width	The width (in pixels) of the graphic object border	
Border Color	The color of the graphic object border	
PLC Value	A simulated input value for testing the graphic object behavior.	

Graphic Link

A graphic link is a special graphic object that lets you switch to another graphic display by clicking on it. Graphic links can also be recognized by their underlined labels, and the mouse cursor changes to a hand icon when the mouse moves over them. This object is especially useful when the Graphic Editor is used in view mode, where no drop-down list of graphic displays is available.

A graphic link can also be used as a hyperlink to an HTML file. If a URL is entered as the **Link Display Name**, the URL can be opened in a new browser window by simultaneously pressing the SHIFT key and clicking the link. Otherwise, the URL opens in the existing browser window when the link is clicked.

If the **Link Display Name** is blank, then the label is not underlined, and the displayed object becomes a simple text label.

The properties of the display link are:

Property	Description	Limits
Label	The link label	
Link Display Name	The name of the graphic display to be loaded when the link is clicked, or the URL of a Web page	
Label Color	The color of the label	
Label Font	The font used on the label	
Bitmap Choices	The filename of the bitmap on which to click	

Indicator Light

The indicator light displays the value of a symbol (variable) or direct address in a PLC with two possible states. An input value of 0 is considered off and a non-zero value is considered on. If the **Flash Interval** property is set to a value greater than 0, the light flashes while the input value is on. There is a bitmap for the on-state and a different one for the off-state.

The properties of the indicator light are:

Property	Description	Limits
Name	The name of the graphic object	
Address	The direct address or the name of a symbol (variable) to monitor	See Note 1, Notes, page 306
Data Type	The data type of the direct address or symbol (variable)	See Note 2, Notes, page 306

Property	Description	Limits
Background	The background color of the graphic object	
Label	The label to be displayed as part of the graphic object	
Label Color	The color of the label	
Label Font	The font used for the label	
OFF Word	The text to display when the input value is off	
OFF Bitmap Choice	The light bitmap when the OFF word is displayed	
OFF Word Color	The color of the OFF word text	
OFF Word Font	The font used for the OFF word text	
ON Word	The text to display when the input value is on	
ON Bitmap Choice	The light bitmap when the ON word is displayed	
ON Word Color	The color of the ON word font	
ON Word Font	The font used for the ON word text	
Flash Interval	The flashing time period (in ms) of the light when the input value is on. Set to 0 for no flashing.	200 to 2000
Input Inverted	If true, inverts the input value. (Light will show the off-word when input value is on.)	
Border Width	The width (in pixels) of the graphic object border	0 to 32
Border Color	The color of the graphic object border	
PLC Value	A simulated input value for testing the graphic object	See Note 3, Notes, page 306

Motor

The motor widget displays the value of a symbol (variable) or direct address in a PLC with three possible states. An input value of 0 is considered off, a value of 1 is considered on and other values are considered default. The three states are represented by different bitmaps.

The properties of the motor widget are:

Property	Description	Limits
Name	The name of the graphic object	
Address	The direct address or the name of a symbol (variable) to monitor	See Note 1, Notes, page 306
Data Type	The data type of the direct address or symbol (variable)	See Note 2, Notes, page 306

Property	Description	Limits
Background	The background color of the graphic object	
Label	The label to be displayed as part of the graphic object	
Label Color	The color of the label	
Label Font	The font used for the label	
OFF Word	The text to display when the input value is off	
OFF Bitmap Choice	The motor bitmap when the OFF word is displayed	
OFFWord Color	The color of the OFF word text	
OFF Word Font	The font used for the OFF word text	
ON Word	The text to display when the input value is ON	
ON Bitmap Choice	The motor bitmap when the ON word is displayed	
ON Word Color	The color of the ON word font	
ON Word Font	The font used for the ON word text	
DEFAULTWord	The text to display when the input value is ON	
DEFAULT Bitmap Choice	The motor bitmap when the DEFAULT word is displayed	
DEFAULT Word Color	The color of the DEFAULT word font	
DEFAULT Word Font	The font used for the DEFAULT word text	
Border Width	The width (in pixels) of the graphic object border	0 to 32
Border Color	The color of the graphic object border	
PLC Value	A simulated input value for testing the graphic object	See Note 3, Notes, page 306

Pipe

The pipe displays the value of a symbol (variable) or direct address in a PLC with two possible states. An input value of 0 is considered off and a non-zero value is considered on. There is a bitmap for the on-state and a different one for the off-state.

The properties of the pipe are:

Property	Description	Limits
Name	The name of the graphic object	
Address	The direct address or the name of a symbol (variable) to monitor	See Note 1, Notes, page 306

Property	Description	Limits
Data Type	The data type of the direct address or symbol (variable)	See Note 2, Notes, page 306
Background	The background color of the graphic object	
Label	The label to be displayed as part of the graphic object	
Label Color	The color of the label	
Label Font	The font used for the label	
OFF Word	The text to display when the input value is off	
OFF Bitmap Choice	The pipe bitmap when the OFF word is displayed	
OFF Word Color	The color for the OFF word text	
OFF Word Font	The font used for the OFF word text	
ON Word	The text to display when the input value is on	
ON Bitmap Choice	The pipe bitmap when the ON word is displayed	
ON Word Color	The color of the ON word font	
ON Word Font	The font used for the ON word text	
Border Width	The width (in pixels) of the graphic object border	0 to 32
Border Color	The color of the graphic object border	
PLC Value	A simulated input value for testing the graphic object	See Note 3, Notes, page 306

Push Button

A push button sends preset value(s) to a PLC when the user clicks it with the mouse.

These are the properties of the Push Button.

Property	Description	Limits
Name	The name of the graphic object	
Address	The direct address or the name of a symbol (variable) to monitor	See Note 1, Notes, page 306
Data Type	The data type of the direct address or symbol (variable)	See Note 2, Notes, page 306
Background	The background color of the graphic object	
Values	The value(s) to send to the PLC	See Note 4, Notes, page 306

Property	Description	Limits
Reset Values	The value(s) to send to the PLC after the reset delay time has expired. If no reset values are provided, no reset action will occur.	
Reset Delay	The delay time (in milliseconds) that the Push Button should use after sending the value(s) to the PLC before sending the reset value(s).	0-2000
Label	The label to be displayed as part of the graphic object	
Label Color	The color of the label	
Label Font	The font used for the label	
Button Label	The text label for the button	
Button Label Color	The color of the button label	
Button Label Font	The font used for the button label	
OFF Bitmap Choice	The button bitmap when the OFF state is displayed	
ON Bitmap Choice	The button bitmap when the ON state is displayed	
Border Width	The width (in pixels) of the graphic object border	0 to 32
Border Color	The color of the graphic object border	

Valve

The valve displays the value of a symbol (variable) or direct address in a PLC with two possible states. An input value of 0 is considered off and a non-zero value is considered on. There is a bitmap for the on-state and a different one for the off-state.

The properties of the valve are:

Property	Description	Limits
Name	The name of the graphic object	
Address	The direct address or the name of a symbol (variable) to monitor	See Note 1, Notes, page 306
Data Type	The data type of the direct address or symbol (variable)	See Note 2, Notes, page 306
Background	The background color of the graphic object	
Label	The label to be displayed as part of the graphic object	
Label Color	The color of the label	
Label Font	The font used for the label	

Property	Description	Limits
OFF Word	The text to display when the input value is off	
OFF Bitmap Choice	The valve bitmap when the OFF word is displayed	
OFF Word Color	The color of the OFF word text	
OFF Word Font	The font used for the OFF word text	
ON Word	The text to display when the input value is ON	
ON Bitmap Choice	The valve bitmap when the ON word is displayed	
ON Word Color	The color of the ON word font	
ON Word Font	The font used for the ON word text	
Flash Interval	The flashing time period (in ms) of the light when the input value is on. Set to 0 for no flashing.	200 to 2000
Border Width	The width (in pixels) of the graphic object border	0 to 32
Border Color	The color of the graphic object border	
PLC Value	A simulated input value for testing the graphic object	See Note 3, Notes, page 306

Notes

These are the notes for the chapter.

1.	<p>If the address property of a graphic object is a direct address, the data type property is set to UNDEFINED, a default data type (BOOL, INT, DINT, or REAL based on the implied size of the data value) is used. If the address property is a symbol (variable) name, the data type property does not have to be specified and can be set to UNDEFINED. If, however, the data type property is specified for a symbol, it is valid only if it exactly matches the symbol actual data type.</p> <p>If the address property is a direct address for a Quantum 0x/1x reference, the data type property must be set to BOOL. The data type property may be a BOOL only for a discrete PLC reference.</p>														
2.	<p>The meaning of the possible values of the Data Type property are:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Data Type</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Meaning</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>UNDEFINED</td> <td>no data type specified</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BOOL</td> <td>1-bit discreet (Boolean)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SHORT</td> <td>8-bit signed integer</td> </tr> <tr> <td>USHORT</td> <td>8-bit unsigned integer</td> </tr> <tr> <td>INT</td> <td>16-bit signed integer</td> </tr> <tr> <td>UINT</td> <td>16-bit unsigned integer</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Data Type	Meaning	UNDEFINED	no data type specified	BOOL	1-bit discreet (Boolean)	SHORT	8-bit signed integer	USHORT	8-bit unsigned integer	INT	16-bit signed integer	UINT	16-bit unsigned integer
Data Type	Meaning														
UNDEFINED	no data type specified														
BOOL	1-bit discreet (Boolean)														
SHORT	8-bit signed integer														
USHORT	8-bit unsigned integer														
INT	16-bit signed integer														
UINT	16-bit unsigned integer														

	DINT	32-bit signed integer
	UDINT	32-bit unsigned integer
	REAL	32-bit IEEE floating point
	TIME	32-bit unsigned integer (in milliseconds)
	DATE	Date (32-bit BCD)
	TOD	Time of Day (32-bit BCD)
	DT	Date and Time (64-bit BCD)
3.	The limits for the Maximum PLC Value and Minimum PLC Value properties are the natural limits of the Data Type property that is set. A Data Type setting of UNDEFINED is treated as REAL with respect to its limit values.	
4	For a Push Button, enter at least one value. If the Address property is a symbol name, only one value is sent to the PLC, and any additional values are ignored. If the Address property is a direct address, all of the values are sent to the PLC as an array, starting at the specified direct address.	

Appendices

What's in This Part

TCP/IP Technical Characteristics	309
IP Address Details.....	319
Transparent Ready Service Classes.....	326
Schneider Private MIB.....	330

Introduction

These technical appendices supplement the information in this guide.

TCP/IP Technical Characteristics

What's in This Chapter

- Summary of TCP/IP Characteristics 309
- Address Management for Ethernet Modules 310
- Modbus Communication on the TCP/IP Profile 311
- Managing TCP Connections for Modbus..... 314
- Opening a TCP/IP Connection 315
- Closing a TCP/IP Connection..... 316
- Broken TCP/IP Connections 317

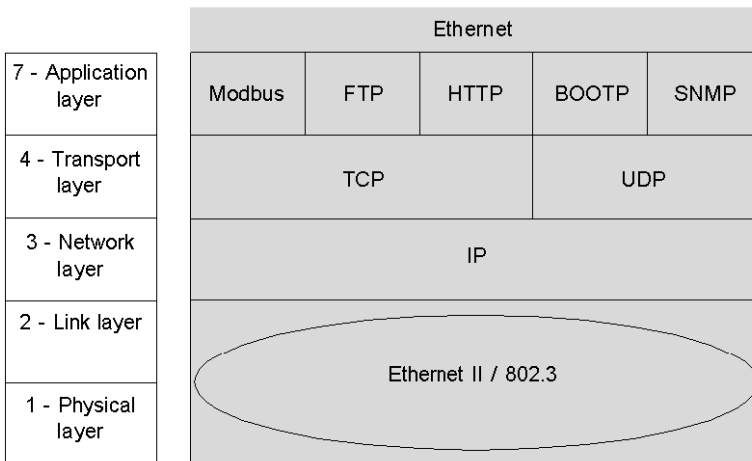
About this Chapter

This chapter contains some of the more technical network and communications characteristics of TCP/IP, as it relates to Modicon M340 devices.

Summary of TCP/IP Characteristics

TCP/IP Communication Profile

The following figure shows the composition of a typical TCP/IP stack as it relates to the 7-layer OSI model:



Software Port 502

The port reserved for the BMX NOE 01x0 or the Ethernet port on the BMX P34 20x0 is TCP port 502. To access these modules' server, do so through this port.

Timeout on TCP Connection

If a TCP connection cannot be established (when the destination is absent for example), a timeout error occurs after 80 seconds.

Confirm that each communication function timeout is set to a value higher than 80 seconds if the first exchange was not successfully completed.

NOTE: If you are using a derived function block (DFB), you can add a timer to verify the completion of a function block:

- To verify that the function block was **incomplete**, write an `On` timer to start when the function is triggered. If the time goes beyond the preset, the variable associated with the pin is set.

Result: You receive a timeout error indicating the communication did **not** work.

- To verify that the function block was **complete**, watch the `active`, `error`, and `complete` outputs of the communication function block. (Depending on the blocks used, they may not be present.) Use the `complete` as an event. If the event completes within the time set, no alarm is recorded. (Essentially, it resets itself.)

Keep Alive Frame

The TCP layer sends a "keep alive" frame, page 317 almost every two hours so that breaks in connection can be detected (for example, cable disconnection, detection of power outage from the client by a server, etc.).

Address Management for Ethernet Modules

Introduction

Having duplicate network addresses may lead to unintended equipment operation.

▲ WARNING

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

Carefully manage the modules IP addresses because each device on the network requires a unique address.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

NOTE: Consult your system administrator to obtain the appropriate network address and subnetwork mask.

MAC Address

The MAC address is unique to each Ethernet module. It is defined in the factory by the module manufacturer.

NOTE: Given the risk of duplicate addresses, ensure that the address conforms to the manufacturer addressing scheme.

IP Address

General case: Define this address when configuring the module. This address must be unique.

Exception: In the absence of configuration by Control Expert, the server, etc., the default IP address of the BMX NOE 01x0 and the Ethernet port of the BMX P34 20x0 CPUs is derived from the MAC address, page 62.

Modbus Communication on the TCP/IP Profile

Modbus Messaging and TCP Port 502

Modbus has been the standard for serial link protocols in industry since 1979. Millions of automation devices use Modbus for communications. For Ethernet, the TCP port 502 is reserved for Modbus.

Therefore, Modbus messaging can be used for exchanging automation data on both Ethernet TCP/IP and the Internet, as well as for all other applications (file exchange, Web

pages, E-mail, etc.). The simple structure of Modbus allows you to download the specifications and source code for numerous devices that use the Modbus TCP/IP protocol. These items are available free of charge from the Modbus-IDA Web site (www.modbus-ida.org).

Port 502 messaging paths:

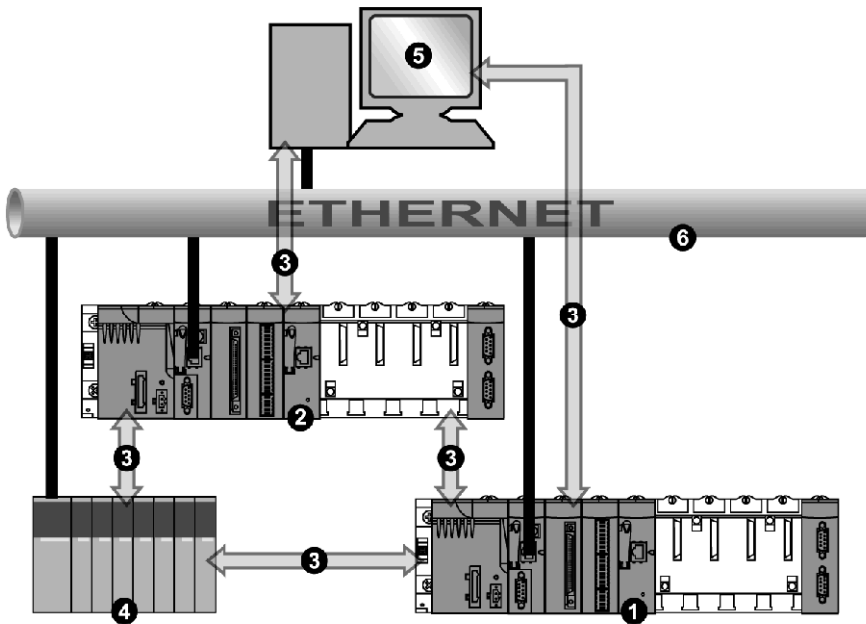
- server path:
 - Port 502 messaging can process up to 8 incoming requests from the network. Requests are received during the previous scan and sent to the Modbus server in the IN section.
 - Port 502 messaging can process up to 8 responses from the Modbus server in the IN section (including writing the data into the socket).
- client path:
 - Port 502 messaging can process up to 16 outgoing requests from the application in the OUT section (including writing the data into the socket).
 - Port 502 messaging can process up to 16 incoming responses from the network in the IN section. Responses are sent to the application.

Modbus Communications

This service enables communications through the Modbus protocol between a Modicon M340 PLC and:

- a Quantum PLC
- a Premium PLC
- a PC with supervisor software
- another device complying with the Modbus protocol

The following figure shows the Modbus communications over open TCP/IP connections:



- 1 Modicon M340 PLC (1)
- 2 Modicon M340 PLC (2)
- 3 Modbus protocol
- 4 Quantum server/client
- 5 client supervisor
- 6 TCP/IP Ethernet

The same module can communicate with a remote device in client mode (for example a Quantum PLC) and another remote device in server mode (for example a supervisor PC).

In the above figure, Modicon M340 PLC (1) is the client to the Quantum PLC. It opens the TCP/IP connection and sends Modbus messages to the Quantum. Modicon M340 PLC (2) is the server to the supervisor. The supervisor has opened a TCP/IP connection for sending Modbus messages to Modicon M340 PLC (2).

Data Exchange

The following requests are addressed to the device on which you want to perform variable read or write operations:

Modbus Requests	Function Code (Hexadecimal)	Communication Function
Read bits	16#01	READ_VAR
Read input bits	16#02	READ_VAR
Read words	16#03	READ_VAR
Write a bit or n bits	16#0F	WRITE_VAR
Write a word or n words	16#10	WRITE_VAR

NOTE: The timeout value for READ_VAR is user-configurable as follows:

- If you enter a 0 as the timeout value, the block will never timeout.
- If you enter a non-zero value, the block will timeout at the non-zero value you entered.

Correspondence of Object Types

This table describes object type correspondence between a Modicon M340 PLC and a Momentum, Quantum, or Premium PLC:

Modicon M340 Objects	Quantum or Momentum Objects
%MW: internal words	4x... memory area
%M: internal bits	0x... memory area
%IW: input words	3x... memory area
%I: input bits	1x... memory area

Managing TCP Connections for Modbus

Overview

The connection can be opened either by the local PLC or by a remote station that wants to communicate with the local PLC.

A connection is characterized by the pair:

(local TCP port, local IP address; remote TCP port, remote IP address)

NOTE: Connection management is transparent to the user.

Opening a TCP/IP Connection

Introduction

A TCP/IP connection can be opened by a request from:

- a remote device
- the local PLC

NOTE: Do not exceed the maximum number of connections. Idle connections that are closed automatically when the limit is reached can affect system performance. See the discussion of closed connections, page 316.

With a Remote Device

The module prepares for a connection coming from a remote device. When the connection is received, verification of the IP address of the remote machine is done only if an `access control check`, page 144 is activated. The test checks to see if the address is on a list of remote machines authorized for connection:

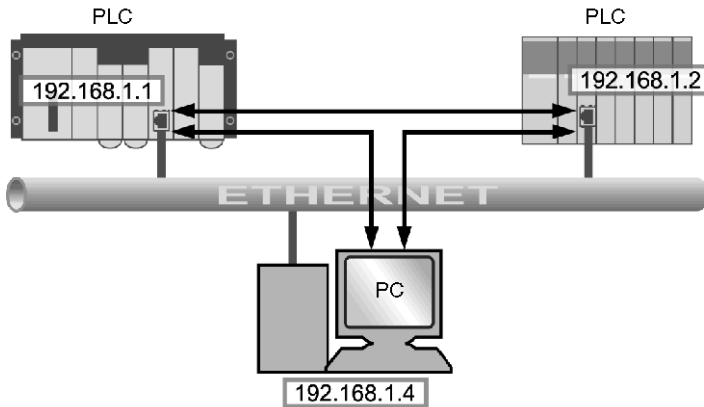
- **positive result:** connection is opened
- **negative result:** connection is closed

With a Local PLC

When a message is sent out by a communication function while there is no connection to the remote device, the module automatically (internally) opens a connection to the remote 502 port.

Opening a Connection Example

The following figure shows an example of connections. (All communications are over Ethernet TCP/IP.)



In this example, three TCP connections are open for communication between the PC and the PLC stations or between two PLC stations.

Either of two PLCs can open the connection between them.

Closing a TCP/IP Connection

Summary

TCP/IP connections can be closed by the:

- **remote station:** The remote station ends communication by sending a TCP/IP connection closure.
- **local station:** When the maximum number of open connections is reached and a new connection is required, the connection that has been idle for the longest time is closed.

NOTE: Do not exceed the maximum number of connections.

Idle connections that are closed automatically when the limit is reached can affect system performance.

Control Expert configuration in TCP/IP mode is not a terminal connection; it can be closed. When the maximum number of connections is reached, the Control Expert connection may be closed.

Elsewhere in this guide are details of the maximum number of connections for the BMX NOE 01x0, page 114 and the maximum number of connections for the BMX P34 20x0 CPUs, page 120.

Broken TCP/IP Connections

Introduction

There are two types of broken TCP/IP connections:

- a physical problem with the network cable (cut or disconnected)
- the disappearance of the remote device (break down, loss of power, etc.)

If the socket is active, the device can detect the failed connection quickly using the diagnostic bit, LED, health bit, etc. If the socket connection is not active, the failed connection is detected after 2 hours by the Keep Alive request. If the connection is reestablished during this interval, the method for restarting communications differs according to the type of break:

- cable disconnection
- lost connection to server
- lost connection to client

These situations are addressed below.

NOTE: Elsewhere in this guide are instructions for opening a connection, page 315 and closing a connection, page 316.

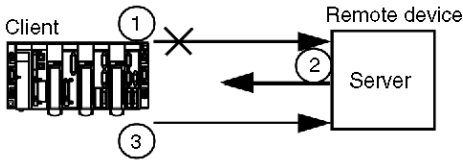
Cable Disconnection

In this case the break in connection is caused by a network cable but the two stations remain operational.

When the cable is reconnected, communication between the Modicon M340 module and the remote device will start again on the same TCP/IP connection that was previously open.

Lost Connection to Server

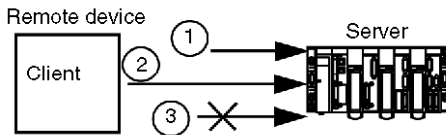
The remote device that disappeared was the server.



- 1 The client Modicon M340 module is still sending out data on the old connection (which remains half open).
- 2 The server receiving the information without associated connection sends out a Reset command and closes the old connection.
- 3 The client Modicon M340 module opens a new connection.

Lost Connection to Client

The remote device that disappeared was the client.



- 1 The client opens a new connection.
- 2 The server Modicon M340 module receives the request to open a new connection.
- 3 The server Modicon M340 module closes the old connection (if there is nothing in progress) and authorizes the new one.

IP Address Details

What's in This Chapter

IP Addresses and Classes	319
Multicasting Considerations	324

About this Chapter

This chapter discusses some important IP address details to consider when incorporating Transparent Ready capabilities into your network design.

IP Addresses and Classes

Summary

An IP address allows a device to have a unique logical address to locate the device on the TCP/IP network and group it with others for network design and management purposes.

Dotted Decimal Notation

A computer sees an IP address in a binary form of 32 bits. For ease of use, the 32 bits have been divided into four 8-bit groups. Each group is converted into its decimal equivalent, which results in four decimal numbers separated by dots. As an example, an IP address in binary 10001011.00101101.00100100.00001100 can be written in a simpler format by converting each individual octet into a decimal value, 139.45.36.12.

10001011	00101101	00100100	00001100
139	45	36	12

Network Address Defined

An IP address consists of two parts, the network address and the host or device address. The subnetmask is a filter that is applied to the IP address to determine which part of the IP address is the network address and which part is the host or device address. The

network address is the part of an IP address that identifies the subnet that the address is a part of. The mask is a 32-bit value that uses one-bits for the network and subnet portions and zero-bits for the host portion. In classful addressing, the network address portion of the IP address consists of one, two or three octets, starting from the left.

IP Address	11000000	10100000	00010100	00110000	192.160.20.48
Subnetwork Mask	11111111	11111111	11111111	00000000	255.255.255.0
Network Portion of IP Address	11000000	10100000	00010100	00000000	192.160.20.0

Classful Addressing

In classful addressing, these are the possible classes of IP addresses to use, depending on the size of your enterprise:

- Class A = 0.0.0.0/8 through 127.0.0.0/8
- Class B = 128.0.0.0/16 through 191.255.0.0/16
- Class C = 192.0.0.0/24 through 223.255.255.0/24
- Class D = 224.0.0.0 through 239.255.255.255 is used for multicasting, page 325

The remaining addresses known as Class E are reserved for experimental use.

An address comprises 2 parts:

- the network information
- the host (node or end device) information

The IP address comprises four sets of decimal numbers called octets, each separated by a period, with a value from 0 to 255 that represents a converted binary-to-decimal number

Classless Addressing

Classless addressing (also known as CIDR or supernetting) was developed to improve current Internet problems regarding the efficient utilization of address space. It also is used to add to the routing scalability of networks. Allocating portions of the large but limited number of addresses to an enterprise all at one time often resulted in the waste of some reserved addresses. Including each network in a table resulted in overload. Also, medium-sized enterprises that fit the class B category have multiplied the fastest, using much of the space in that class. Classless addressing, by allowing the delineation point between network information and host information to be flexible, has expanded the number of addresses available to all sizes of enterprise and has reduced the size of routing tables.

Choosing an Address Range

Public addresses, for use on the Internet, are assigned by a governing organization called the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). However, your company may already have been assigned a section of addresses and your IT person can allocate the quantity that you need. If you have not been given a predefined set of IP ranges, you should be aware that the following three blocks have been reserved by IANA for private Internets:

10.0.0.0 - 10.255.255.255 (10/8 prefix)

172.16.0.0 - 172.31.255.255 (172.16/12 prefix)

192.168.0.0 - 192.168.255.255 (192.168/16 prefix)

Special Addresses

There are three types of special addresses that should be mentioned:

- broadcast
- loopback
- network

A broadcast message, usually used for network management and diagnostic purposes, is addressed to all stations on the network. The destination address in a broadcast message is made up of all 1s (255.255.255.255).

A loopback address is used to test the implementation of the TCP/IP protocol on a host. The lower layers are bypassed by sending to a loopback address. This allows the higher layers (IP and above) to be tested without exposing problems at the lower layers. 127.0.0.1 is the address typically used for loopback testing.

As described in the previous section, network address refers to the network portion of an IP (Internet Protocol) address.

Sufficient Addresses

In planning for your network, you should anticipate the need for these addresses:

- for the gateway (one address)
- for broadcast
- for the number of services
- for future devices added to the network

Tools can be found on the Internet to help calculate the number of addresses your network requires.

Subnetting

Forming subnets divides a large network into more manageable segments; it can allow you to expand the number of networks, while using only the single IP address. You need not apply for more of the limited number of IP address numbers.

Network traffic is reduced by sending messages to only a limited segment of the network. Subnetting can be particularly helpful on a network that handles a lot of broadcast traffic. It can also be useful if you have a slow WAN link connecting your far-flung locations.

To subnet, the default subnetwork mask for a network is extended to cover bits of the address that would otherwise be part of the host field. Once these bits are masked, they become part of the network field and are used to identify subnets of the larger network.

Choose a subnet of a size (number of addresses) appropriate for the number of devices on it; a size that allows for growth, but is not wasteful of addresses. For example, if you have 50 devices, choose a subnet of 64 addresses, not 1024. The following table contains one column presenting the number of addresses and another with the corresponding mask.

subnetwork Mask	Number of Addresses
0.0.0.0	4,294,964,086
128.0.0.0	2,147,482,048
192.0.0.0	1,073,741,024
224.0.0.0	536,870,512
240.0.0.0	268,435,256
248.0.0.0	134,217,628
252.0.0.0	67,108,864
254.0.0.0	33,554,432
255.0.0.0	16,777,216
255.128.0.0	8,388,608
255.192.0.0	4,194,304
255.224.0.0	2,097,152
255.240.0.0	1,048,576
255.248.0.0	524,288
255.252.0.0	262,144

subnetwork Mask	Number of Addresses
255.254.0.0	131,072
255.255.0.0	65,536
255.255.128.0	32,768
255.255.192.0	16,384
255.255.224.0	8,192
255.255.240.0	4,096
255.255.248.0	2,048
255.255.252.0	2048
255.255.254.0	1024
255.255.255.0	512
255.255.255.128	128
255.255.255.192	64
255.255.255.224	32
255.255.255.240	16
255.255.255.248	8
255.255.255.252	4
255.255.255.254	2
255.255.255.255	1

For a subnet with 64 addresses, the subnetwork mask is 255.255.255.192. The IP address would therefore be 192.168.1.1, the network address would be 192.168.0 and the host range would be from 0.1 to .63.

Using Subnets in a Plant

By using subnets in your plant, you can divide the plant into sections to avoid traffic overload. Use a router to pass traffic between subnets. There should be no more than 200 to 300 devices per network. However, it is preferable to have a smaller network with 50 to 100 devices. Add networks if you must accommodate more devices than the preferred number.

Assigning Addresses

You may obtain addresses from the governing organization or use a group of those already assigned to your company. The next step is to assign a unique address to each end device by one of several methods. In static addressing, each user is assigned one fixed IP address to be used every time the user connects to the Internet. Dynamic addressing assigns the IP automatically, as needed. BootP (Bootstrap Protocol) as its name suggests, allows a workstation to configure itself without a hard drive or floppy disk. The workstation can discover its own IP address, the IP of a server and a file to be loaded into memory to boot the machine. DHCP assigns a different address to a device when it requests one. The software, rather than the administrator as in static addressing, keeps track of the IP addresses.

Multicasting Considerations

Summary

IP multicast, a method of selectively sending messages promoted by an industry consortium of prominent companies, is an up-and-coming technology that will be used increasingly for:

- *monitoring*: manufacturing and other types of real-time information, sensor equipment or security systems.
- *announcements*: network time, multicast session schedules, random numbers, keys, configuration updates, etc.
- *file distribution and caching*: Web site content, executable binaries
- *scheduled distribution* of audio and video
- *push media*: news headlines, weather updates, sports scores, etc.

On the Internet

You should make sure that your router and/or switches support multicast, your workstations are configured to join a multicast group and that you have installed any specific applications needed to receive the multicast.

IP Multicasting Transport

The UDP protocol is used for IP multicasting. The multicast address selected is important in allowing network managers to control the way hosts (end devices) join groups and how routers exchange multicast information.

IP Multicast Addresses

In IP multicasting, each group has a multicast group ID, a set of Class D IP addresses used to specify the destination of a message. The addresses range from 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255. Each multicast IP address can have a number of hosts listening to it. Hosts can belong to a multicast group, and the IP addresses are associated with that group. Each configured device has a multicast IP address that is in addition to its own IP address.

Class D addresses can be classified as follows:

- *permanently assigned*: addresses in the range 224.0.0.0 to 224.0.0.225, permanently assigned by IANA for certain applications such as routing protocols; for example:
 - 224.0.0.0 for the base address
 - 224.0.0.1 for all systems on this subnet
 - 224.0.0.2 for all routers on this subnet
 - 224.0.0.4 for DVMRP routers
- *nonpermanent*: addresses in the range 224.0.1.0 to 238.255.255.255, used for assignment as needed on the Internet
- *administered nonpermanent*: addresses in the range 239.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255, reserved for use in private Intranets

Transparent Ready Service Classes

What's in This Chapter

Service Classes	326
-----------------------	-----

Service Classes

Introduction

The Transparent Ready service classes make it possible to identify the services provided by each device, such as:

- diagnostic, display, and control services via Web technologies
- Ethernet communication services

Web Service Classes

The four Web service classes are defined by letter:

- class A: no Web services
- class B: standard Web services
- class C: configurable Web services
- class D: active Web services

Transparent Ready devices with an embedded Web server can provide four types of Web service:

- maintenance
- control
- diagnostic
- optional, such as documentation and configuration

NOTE: The availability of Web service classes depends on your choice from the standard and optional memory cards, page 49.

This table specifies the services provided by each Web service class (A, B, C, D):

Web Server Class		Web Services			
		Maintenance	Monitoring and IT Link	Diagnostics	Optional
A	none	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> no web service 			
B	standard	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> remote device software update remote auto-tests 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> device description data viewer 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> device description data diagnostic 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> configuration of network parameters and Ethernet communication services device documentation
C	configurable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> user Web site update 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> PLC variables editor remote commands user Web pages SOAP/XML (server) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> communication service diagnostics state of internal device resources 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> user documentation
D	active	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> user Web site update 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> autonomous execution of specific services (e.g., alarm notification by E-mail, exchange with databases, calculations, ...) SOAP/XML (client/server) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> user-defined states 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> user documentation

Ethernet Communication Service Classes

The Ethernet communication services provided by devices are (identified by number):

- class 10: standard Ethernet communication services
- class 20: Ethernet communication management services (network level and device level)
- class 30: advanced Ethernet communication services

Transparent Ready devices can provide these Ethernet communication services:

- Modbus TCP/IP messaging service, page 97
- I/O scanning service, page 76
- FDR (Fast Device Replacement) service, page 93
- SNMP network management service, page 86

- Global Data service, page 91
- Bandwidth management service, page 95

The following table specifies the services provided for each Ethernet communication service class:

Ethernet Communication Service Classes		Ethernet communication services		
		Modbus Messaging	I/O Scanning	FDR
30	advanced services	direct reading/writing of I/O	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • periodic read/write of I/O • config. of the list of scanned devices 	automatic control/update of device parameter config.
20	communication management services			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • automatic assignment of IP address and network parameters • control/update config. and device parameters by the user
10	standard services	reading/writing of data words		Local assignment of the IP address Verification of duplicate IP addresses

Ethernet communication service classes (continued):

Ethernet Communication Service Classes		Ethernet communication services		
		Network Management SNMP	Global Data	Bandwidth Management
30	advanced services	use of the MIB library by SNMP manager	publish/subscribe network variables	monitor load level
20	communication management services	detection of devices by SNMP manager		
10	standard services			

Choosing Transparent Ready Devices

Transparent Ready devices are chosen from four main families:

- sensor and actuator type field devices (simple or intelligent)
- controllers and PLCs
- Human Machine Interface (HMI) applications
- dedicated gateways and servers

The services provided by a given Transparent Ready device are identified by the level of Web service (a letter) followed by the level of Ethernet communication service (a number). For example:

- a class A10 product is a device in with class A Web services (none) and class 10 Ethernet services (standard)
- a class C30 product is a device with class C Web services (configurable) and class 30 Ethernet services (advanced)

NOTE: Service classes are incremental subsets. That is, class D includes all the services in class C, and class C includes all the services in class B. (Class A has no services.)

The selection table on the following pages can be used for choosing Transparent Ready devices according to the required service classes:

Ethernet Communication Services		Class A	Class B	Class C	Class D
		no service	standard	configurable	active
Class 30	advanced service	A30	B30	C30	D30
Class 20	communication management services	A20	B20	C20	D20
Class 10	standard services	A10	B10	C10	D10

Schneider Private MIB

What's in This Chapter

The Schneider Private MIB	330
Schneider Private MIB Tree Structure.....	332
MIB Subtree Description.....	340
Switch Subtree Description.....	341
Port 502 Messaging Subtree Description	342
I/O Scanning Subtree Description	342
Global Data Subtree Description	343
Web Subtree Description.....	344
Address Server Subtree Description.....	344
Equipment Profile Subtree Description	344
Time Management Subtree Description	346
Email Subtree Description	346
Transparent Factory MIB Version	347
Private Traps and MIB Files	347

About this Chapter

This chapter provides the detailed tree structure of the Schneider private MIB and a description of its services.

The Schneider Private MIB

Introduction

A MIB (Management Information Base) is an element used in network management. Network management services are based on the need to monitor and manage:

- performance
- fault occurrences
- security

NOTE: The Transparent Factory private MIB does not define specific management applications and policies.

Each MIB contains a finite number of objects. Use the SNMP manager's GET and SET to retrieve system information and to set system environment variables.

Schneider Private MIB

The Transparent Factory SNMP-embedded component controls the Schneider private MIB function. This private MIB, and its associated services, manages all system components. The private MIB provides the data to manage the main Transparent Factory communication services for all the communication components of the Transparent Factory architecture, including:

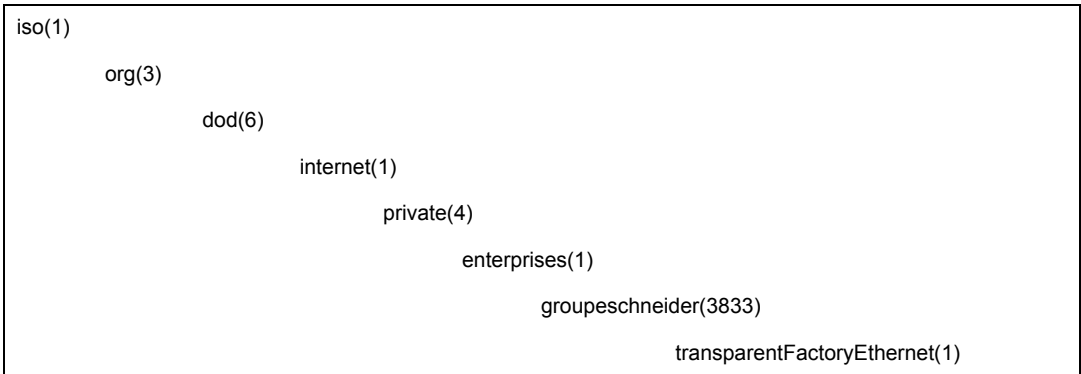
- Ethernet communication modules (NOE, ETY, M1E, etc.)
- CPUs with Ethernet communication ports

Elsewhere in this guide is the detailed tree structure of the transparentFactoryEthernet MIB, page 332.

Private MIB Identifier

Schneider Electric obtained a Private Enterprise Number (PEN) from the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). That number represents a subtree in the SNMP MIB, a number that is a unique identifier used for Groupe Schneider.

The object identifier for the root of the Groupe Schneider subtree is 1 . 3 . 6 . 1 . 4 . 1 . 3833 and represents a path to the subtree as follows:



Under the Groupe Schneider private MIB is a TFE private MIB, transparentFactoryEthernet (1).

Schneider Private MIB Tree Structure

Introduction

This topic outlines the tree structure for the private Schneider MIB (Schneider TFE-V01-04.mib) for all Transparent Ready products.

The groupeschneider (3833) subtree is the root of Groupe Schneider's private MIB in the Structure of Management Information (SMI) used by SNMP and defined in RFC-1155, a specification that defines the structure and identification of management information for TCP/IP-based networks.

Tree Structure

```
groupeschneider (3833)
  (1) transparentFactoryEthernet
    |--- (1) switch
    |----- (14) saConfiguration
    |----- (1) saChassis
    |----- (2) saAgent
    |----- (3) saUserGroup
    |----- (5) saRingRedundancy
    |----- (7) saLLDP
    |----- (15) saPlatform4
    |----- (1) saPlatform4BasicL2
    |--- (2) Port502Messaging
    |----- (1) port502Status
    |----- (2) port502SupportedProtocol
    |----- (3) port502IpSecurity
    |----- (4) port502MaxConn
    |----- (5) port502LocalConn
```

```
|----- (6) port502RemConn
|----- (7) port502IpSecurityTable
|----- (1) port502IpSecurityEntry
|----- (1) attemptFails
|----- (2) ipSourceAddress
|----- (8) port502ConnTable
|----- (1) port502ConnEntry
|----- (1) port502ConnLocalPort
|----- (2) port502ConnRemAddress
|----- (3) port502ConnRemPort
|----- (4) port502ConnType
|----- (5) port502ConnMsgIn
|----- (6) port502ConnMsgOut
|----- (7) port502ConnMsgErr
|----- (8) port502XwayNet
|----- (9) port502XwayStation
|----- (9) port502MsgIn
|----- (10) port502MsgOut
|----- (11) port502MsgOutErr
|----- (12) port502AddStackStat
|----- (13) port502AddStackStatTable
|----- (1) port502AddStackStatEntry
|----- (1) port502AddStackStatIndex
|----- (2) port502PeaKTcpRetransSegs
|--- (3) ioScanning
|----- (1) ioScanStatus
|----- (2) ioScanMaxDevice
|----- (3) ioScanPolledDevice
```

```
|----- (4) ioScanTransSend
|----- (5) ioScanGlbHealth
|----- (6) ioScanningDeviceTable
|----- (1) ioScanDeviceEntry
|----- (1) IoScanDeviceRemAddress
|----- (2) IoScanDeviceHealth
|----- (3) IoScanDeviceRate
|----- (4) ioScanInputLocalAddress
|----- (5) ioScanOutputLocalAddress
|--- (4) globalData
|----- (1) glbDataStatus
|----- (2) glbDataMaxPub
|----- (3) glbDataMaxSub
|----- (4) glbDataPub
|----- (5) glbDataSub
|----- (6) glbDataPubErr
|----- (7) glbDataSubErr
|----- (8) glbDataGlbSubHealth
|----- (9) glbDataPubTable
|----- (1) glbDataPubEntry
|----- (1) glbDataPubSourceAddress
|----- (2) glbDataPubHostId
|----- (3) glbDataPubNetId
|----- (4) glbDataPubGroupId
|----- (5) glbDataPubCnt
|----- (6) glbDataPubErrCnt
|----- (7) glbDataPubDistribRate
|----- (8) glbDataPubDuplicateErr
```

```
|----- (10) glbDataSubTable
|----- (1) glbDataSubEntry
|----- (1) glbDataSubSourceAddress
|----- (2) glbDataSubHostId
|----- (3) glbDataSubNetId
|----- (4) glbDataSubGroupId
|----- (5) glbDataSubCnt
|----- (6) glbDataSubErrCnt
|----- (7) glbDataMinimumSeparation
|----- (8) glbDataHealth
|----- (9) glbDataHealthTimeOut
|----- (10) glbDataLastRecErr
|--- (5) Web
|----- (1) webStatus
|----- (2) webPassword
|----- (3) webSuccessfullAccess
|----- (4) webFailedAttempts
|--- (6) addressServer
|----- (1) addressServerStatus
|--- (7) equipmentProfile
|----- (1) profileProductName
|----- (2) profileVersion
|----- (3) profileCommunicationServices
|----- (4) profileGlobalStatus
|----- (5) profileConfigMode
|----- (6) profileRoleName
|----- (7) profileBandwidthMgt
|----- (8) profileBandwidthDistTable
```

```
|----- (1) profileBandwidthDistEntry
|----- (1) bandwidthDistributionIndex
|----- (2) port502Bandwidth
|----- (3) ioScanningBandwidth
|----- (4) globalDataBandwidth
|----- (5) otherBandwidth
|----- (9) profileLedDisplayTable
|----- (1) profileLedDisplayEntry
|----- (1) ledIndex
|----- (2) ledName
|----- (3) ledDescr
|----- (4) ledState
|----- (10) profileSlot
|----- (11) profileCPUType
|----- (12) profileTrapTableEntriesMax
|----- (13) profileTrapTable
|----- (1) profileTrapEntry
|----- (1) trapCommunityName
|----- (2) remoteIpAddress
|----- (3) authenticationTrap
|----- (4) port502Trap
|----- (5) ioScanningTrap
|----- (6) globalDataTrap
|----- (7) webTrap
|----- (8) addressServerTrap
|----- (9) profileTrap
|----- (10) timeManagementTrap
|----- (11) emailTrap
```

```
|----- (14) profileSpecificId
|----- (15) profileIpAddress
|----- (16) profileIpNetMask
|----- (17) profileIpGateway
|----- (18) profileMacAddress
|----- (19) profileImplementationClass
|----- (100) premiumProfile
|----- (101) quantumProfile
|----- (100) qnoe
|----- (1) qNoeCommand
|----- (102) microProfile
|----- (100) mEtz
|----- (1) etzIpMgtStatus
|----- (2) etzIpMgtDhcpTries
|----- (3) etzIpMgtDhcpMode
|----- (4) etzRepUserBkups
|----- (5) etzRepAutoBkups
|----- (6) etzRepStatus
|----- (7) etzRepTFPcnxErrors
|----- (8) etzRepTFPxferErrors
|----- (103) momentumIoProfile
|----- (1) momentumIoBaseType
|----- (2) momentumIoBaseName
|----- (3) momentumIoMasterIPTable
|----- (1) momentumIoMasterIPEntry
|----- (1) momentumIoMasterIPValue
|----- (4) momentumIoModuleTimeOut
|----- (5) momentumIoASCIIModuleHeader
```

```
|----- (6) momentumIoReservationTime
|----- (7) momentumIoInputDataTable
|----- (1) momentumIoInputDataEntry
|----- (1) momentumIoInputDataIndex
|----- (2) momentumIoInputDataValues
|----- (3) momentumIoInputDataWords
|----- (4) momentumIoInputDataPoints
|----- (8) momentumIoOutputDataTable
|----- (1) momentumIoOutputDataEntry
|----- (1) momentumIoOutputDataIndex
|----- (2) momentumIoOutputDataValues
|----- (3) momentumIoOutputDataWords
|----- (4) momentumIoOutputDataPoints
|----- (104) momentumM1eProfile
|----- (105) advantysProfile
|----- (106) gatewayProfile
|----- (107) modiconM340Profile
|----- (255) tfProducts
|----- (1) ety
|----- (2) noe
|----- (3) etz
|----- (4) momentumIo
|----- (5) momentumM1e
|----- (6) altivar
|----- (7) stbNip
|----- (8) tsxntp
|----- (9) nwm
|----- (10) wmy
```

```
|----- (11) quantumPLC
|----- (12) premiumPLC
|----- (13) etg
|----- (14) egx
|----- (15) ecc
|----- (16) cev
|----- (17) inducteIXGKS
|----- (18) ositrackTAP
|----- (19) twidoPLC
|----- (20) modiconM340PLC
|----- (21) modiconM340DPLC
|----- (22) modiconM340CPLC
|----- (23) modiconM340NOE
|--- (8) timeManagement
|----- (1) ntp
|----- (1) ntpStatus
|----- (2) ntpSrvAddr
|----- (3) ntpInkSrvStatus
|----- (4) ntpReqCnt
|----- (5) ntpRespCnt
|----- (6) ntpErrCnt
|----- (7) ntpDate
|----- (8) ntpTime
|----- (9) ntpTimeZone
|----- (10) ntpDSTStatus
|----- (11) ntpLastErr
|--- (9) email
|----- (1) smtp
```

```

|----- (1) emailTable
|----- (1) emailEntry
|----- (1) emailIndex
|----- (2) smtpStatus
|----- (3) smtpSrvAddr
|----- (4) smtpMailSentCnt
|----- (5) smtpErrCnt
|----- (6) smtpLastErr
|----- (7) smtpLastMailElapsedTime
|----- (8) smtpLnkSrvStatus
|----- (9) smtpSrvChkFailCnt
|--- (255) tfeMibVersion
|----- (1) tfeMibVersionNumber
|----- (2) tfeMibVersionDate
    
```

MIB Subtree Description

Transparent Factory Ethernet Subtree

This topic details some of the objects in the Schneider private MIB tree. The **transparentFactoryEthernet(1)** subtree defines groups that support the TFE services and devices:

Service	Subtree Definition
switch(1) , page 341	the brand of switches labeled
port502Messaging(2) , page 342	objects for managing explicit client/server communications to support applications (for example, HMI, SCADA, or programming tools)
ioScanning(3) , page 342	objects for managing I/O device communications that use the I/O Scanner with the Modbus/TCP protocol
globalData(4) , page 343	objects for managing the application coordination service using a publish/subscribe protocol
web(5)	objects for managing the activity of the embedded Web servers

Service	Subtree Definition
addressServer(6) , page 344	objects for managing the activity of the BOOTP or DHCP servers
equipmentProfile(7) , page 344	objects for each device type in Transparent Factory Ethernet product portfolio
timeManagement(8) (NTP) , page 346	objects for managing the UTC time stamp service
email(9) (SMTP) , page 346	objects for managing the email service
tfeMibVersion(255) , page 347	the version of the Schneider TFE MIB supported by the product

NOTE: All listed services are not available on all communications modules. Refer to the available services for your module.

When devices are added to the Schneider catalog, the private MIB is extended in the following manner:

- If needed, a Transparent Factory communication-service object is added for the new device in the subtree that corresponds to **equipmentProfile(7)**, page 344. This subtree can hold as many objects as are required.
- If needed, a new branch is added at the same level as **transparentFactoryEthernet (1)**. This subtree is created for product-specific objects.

When a new device is added to the catalog a corresponding object description is created in the ASN.1 format. The ASN.1 file(s) are then given to producers of SNMP manager software for inclusion in their products.

Switch Subtree Description

Switch Subtree

The switch (1) subtree, or group, indicates the brand of switches labeled. The following list describes the function of each object.

Service	Indicates . . .
saChassis(1)	configuration of the chassis
saAgent(2)	configuration of Agent
saRingRedundancy(3)	management of Ring Redundancy
saUserGroup(5)	management of user groups
saLLDP(7)	management of proprietary extensions of 802.1AB (station and Media access control Connectivity Discovery)

Port 502 Messaging Subtree Description

Port 502 Messaging Subtree

The port502Messaging (2) subtree, or group, provides connection management and data flow services. The following list describes the function of each object.

Service	Indicates . . .
port502Status(1)	status of the service (idle or operational)
port502SupportedProtocol(2)	supported protocols (MODBUS, X-way, etc.)
port502IpSecurity(3)	status of the Port 502 IP Security service (enabled or disabled)
port502MaxConn(4)	maximum number of TCP connections supported by the Port 502 entity
port502LocalConn(5)	number of TCP connections currently opened by the local Port 502 entity
port502RemConn(6)	number of TCP connections currently opened by the remote entity to the local Port 502 entity
port502IpSecurityTable(7)	a table containing the number of unsuccessful attempts to open a TCP connection from a remote TCP entity
port502ConnTable(8)	a table containing Port 502 TCP specific information (MsgIn, MsgOut)
port502MsgIn(9)	total number of Port 502 messages received from the network
port502MsgOut(10)	total number of Port 502 messages sent from the network
port502MsgOutErr(11)	total number of diagnostic messages built by the Port 502 messaging entity and sent to the network
port502AddStackStat(12)	the support of additional Port 502 stack statistics
port502AddStackStatTable(13)	additional stack statistics for Port 502 (optional)

I/O Scanning Subtree Description

I/O Scanning Subtree

The ioScanning (3) subtree, or group, contains the objects related to I/O scanning device management and associated Modbus communications on port 502.

Service	Indicates . . .
ioScanStatus(1)	global status of the I/O scanning service
ioScanMaxDevice(2)	maximum number of devices supported by the I/O scanning entity
ioScanPolledDevice(3)	number of devices currently polled by the I/O scanning entity
ioScanTransSend(4)	total number of transactions sent by the I/O scanning entity
ioScanGlbHealth(5)	global health status for the I/O scanning service
ioScanningDeviceTable(6)	a table containing information on each remote device polled by the I/O scanning entity

Global Data Subtree Description

Global Data Subtree

The globalData (4) subtree, or group, contains the objects related to Global Data.

Service	Indicates . . .
glbDataStatus(1)	global status of the Global Data service
glbDataMaxPub(2)	maximum number of published variables configured by the Global Data entity
glbDataMaxSub(3)	maximum number of subscribed variables configured by the Global Data entity
glbDataPub(4)	total number of publications sent to the network
glbDataSub(5)	total number of subscriptions received from the network
glbDataPubErr(6)	total number of publication errors detected by the local entity
glbDataSubErr(7)	total number of subscription errors detected by the local entity
glbDataGlbSubHealth(8)	global health status of the Global Data service
glbDataPubTable(9)	a table containing information on each published variable (the number of publications, the source IP address, the number of errors, etc.)
glbDataSubTable(10)	a table containing information on each subscribed variable (the number of subscriptions, the source IP address, the number of errors, health, etc.)

Web Subtree Description

Web Subtree

The web (5) subtree, or group, contains the objects related to the Web server service.

Service	Indicates . . .
webStatus(1)	global status of the Web service
webPassword(2)	enable or disable Web passwords
webSuccessfulAccess(3)	total number of successful attempts to access Web site
webFailedAttempts(4)	total number of failed attempts to access Web site

Address Server Subtree Description

Address Server Subtree

The addressServer (6) subtree, or group, contains the objects related to the Address Server. The address server can be either a BOOTP server or a DHCP server.

Service	Indicates . . .
addressServerStatus(1)	global status of the address server service

Equipment Profile Subtree Description

Equipment Profile Subtree

The equipmentProfile (7) subtree contains a set of common objects.

Service	Indicates . . .
profileProductName(1)	the commercial name of the communication product in string form (for example: 140 NOE 771 11, BMX NOE 0100, etc.)
profileVersion(2)	the software version of the communication product in string form (for example, Vx.y or V1.1)

Service	Indicates . . .
profileCommunicationServices(3)	the communication services supported by the profile (Port502Messaging, I/O scanning Messaging, Global Data, Web, and Address Server)
profileGlobalStatus(4)	the global status of the communication module
profileConfigMode(5)	the IP configuration mode of the communication module
profileRoleName(6)	the role name for the IP address management if it exists (empty string if there is none)
profileBandwidthMgt(7)	the status of Bandwidth Management
profileBandwidthDistTable(8)	the CPU time distribution between Global Data, Port 502 Messaging, I/O scanning
profileLedDisplayTable(9)	a table giving the name and the state of each module's LEDs
profileSlot(10)	the position of the communication module inside the rack if there is one (if there is no rack, the profileSlot value is 0)
profileCPUType(11)	the host for which that communication module is a part when a CPU type exists (if there is no host, the string is empty)
profileTrapTableEntriesMax(12)	the maximum numbers of entries in the Trap Table (equal to the number of possible remote managers)
profileTrapTable(13)	a table allowing you to enable or disable the private traps for each of the communication services
profileSpecificId(14)	a unique Profile Specific Identification inside the equipmentProfile object of the Schneider Transparent Factory MIB (for example, the PLC Premium family is 100)
profileIpAddress(15)	the IP address of the SNMP agent
profileIpNetMask(16)	the subnetwork mask associated with the IP address of the SNMP agent (the value of the mask is an IP address with all the network bits set to 1 and all the host bits set to 0)
profileIpGateway(17)	the default Gateway IP address of the SNMP agent
profileMacAddress(18)	the Ethernet media-dependent address of the SNMP agent
profileImplementationClass(19)	a textual description of the implementation class supported by the product
premiumProfile(100)	managed products (ETY, ETY port)
quantumProfile(101)	managed products (NOE)
microProfile(102)	managed products (ETZ)
momentumIoProfile(103)	managed products (ENT)
momentumM1eProfile(104)	managed products (M1E)
advantysProfile(105)	managed products (STB NIP)

Service	Indicates . . .
gatewayProfile(106)	managed products (ETG)
modiconM340profile(107)	managed products (Modicon M340 PLC)
tfProducts(225)	Transparent Factory products

Time Management Subtree Description

Time Management Subtree

The timeManagement (8) subtree contains a set of common NTP objects.

Service	Indicates . . .
ntpStatus(1)	the status of the NTP service (not server)
ntpSrvAddr(2)	the IP address of the NTP server in dot notation format
ntpLnkSrvStatus(3)	the status of the link between the module and the NTP server
ntpReqCnt(4)	the number of requests sent to the NTP server
ntpRespCnt(5)	the number of responses received from the NTP server
ntpErrCnt(6)	the total number of communication errors
ntpDate(7)	date of the day
ntpTime(8)	time of the day
ntpTimeZone(9)	current time zone
ntpDSTStatus(10)	daylight saving time status
ntpLastErr(11)	last error code generated by system

Email Subtree Description

Email Subtree

The email(9) subtree contains a set of common SMTP objects.

Service	Indicates . . .
emailIndex(1)	the index value in the email service table
smtpStatus(2)	the status of SMTP service (not server)
smtpSrvAddr(3)	the IP address of SMTP server in dot notation format
smtpMailSentCnt(4)	the total number of emails sent to the network and successfully acknowledged by the server
smtpErrCnt(5)	the total number of email messages that could not be sent to the network or that have been sent but not acknowledged by the server
smtpLastErr(6)	the error code of the last error that occurred while trying to send an email message to the network
smtpLastMailElapsedTime(7)	the number of elapsed seconds since last successful email was sent to the server
smtpLnkSrvStatus(8)	the status of link with SMTP server
smtpSrvChkFailCnt(9)	the number of times the link to SMTP server is detected as 'down.'

Transparent Factory MIB Version

tfeMibVersion Subtree

This group contains information about the version of the Schneider TFE MIB, page 330 supported by the product.

Service	Indicates . . .
tfeMibVersionNumber(1)	the version of the SchneiderTFE Mib in Vxx.yy form (example V01.04)
tfeMibVersionDate(2)	the date of last update of the SchneiderTFE MIB in 'ddMmmyy' form (example: 09Jan06)

Private Traps and MIB Files

Private Traps and MIB Files

Traps are used to signal status changes to the manager while avoiding additional traffic:

- **LEDs** (`profileLED`): This trap is sent if the LED state changes.

- **communications ports** (`port502StatusChange`): This trap is sent if `port502Status` changes.
- **I/O scanning health value** (`ioScanStatusChange`): This trap is sent if `ioScanStatus` changes.
- **global data health value** (`glbDataStatusChange`): This trap is sent if `glbDataStatus` changes.
- **Web service** (`webStatusChange`): This trap is sent if `webStatus` changes.
- **address server** (`addressServerStatusChange`): This trap is sent if `addressServerStatus` changes.
- **NTP service** (see below)
- **SMTP service** (see below)

Private traps can:

- send messages to the two managers whose IP addresses are configured in the SNMP configuration
- use the community name given to this configuration
- enable or disable each of the Transparent Factory Ethernet Private MIB groups listed in the Transparent Factory Ethernet Subtree, page 340.

Private traps are described in the MIB ASN.1 description, which is contained in a `.mib` text file.

NTP Traps

- **NTP status** (`ntpStatusChange`): This trap is sent if `ntpStatus` changes.
- **server change** (`ntpServerChange`): This trap is sent if the NTP component switches from the Primary NTP server to the standby NTP server or vice versa.
- **link server status change** (`ntpLnkSrvStatusChange`): This trap is sent if the NTP link server status changes.
- **leap second** (`ntpLeapSecond`): This trap is sent when leap seconds are inserted.
- **DST change** (`ntpDSTChange`): This trap notifies the manager that the NTP server time has changed from either:
 - standard time to daylight savings time, or
 - daylight savings time to standard time

SMTP Traps

- **SMTP status change** (`smtpStatusChange`): This trap is sent if `smtpStatus` of the email service referenced by `emailIndex` changes.
- **SMTP link to server status** (`smtpLnkSrvChange`): This trap is sent when the `smtpLnkSrvStatus` of the email service referenced by `emailIndex` changes. The trap is sent when the service tries to send an email. Every 30 minutes a periodic test checks the connection to the SMTP server.

Glossary

10/100 Base-T:

An adaptation of the IEEE 802.3 (Ethernet) standard, the 10/100 Base-T standard uses twisted-pair wiring with a maximum segment length of 100 m (328 ft) and terminates with an RJ-45 connector. A 10/100Base-T network is capable of transmitting data on normal Ethernet (10 Mbit/s) and Fast Ethernet (100 Mbits/s) networks.

802.3 frame:

A frame format, specified in the IEEE 802.3 (Ethernet) standard, in which the header specifies the data packet length.

A

ASN.1:

Abstract Syntax Notation One. ASN.1 is a method for encoding/decoding messages sent between systems of different types that use different languages. It is defined by ISO standards 8824/ITU X.208 and 8825/ITU X.209.

B

BOOTP:

bootstrap protocol. A UDP/IP protocol that allows an Internet node to obtain its IP parameters based on its MAC address.

bps:

bits per second.

bridge:

A bridge device connects two or more physical networks that use the same protocol. Bridges read frames and decide whether to transmit or block them based on their destination address.

broadcast:

Broadcast communications send packets from a one station to every network destination. Broadcast messages pertain to every network device or only one device for which the address is not known. (See *multicast* and *unicast*).

C

CAN:

controller area network. The CAN protocol (ISO 11898) for serial bus networks is designed for the interconnection of smart devices (from multiple manufacturers) in smart systems for real-time industrial applications. CAN multi-master systems provide high data integrity through the implementation of broadcast messaging and advanced error detection mechanisms. Originally developed for use in automobiles, CAN is now used in a variety of industrial automation control environments.

CANopen:

CANopen is higher level protocol that is used in automation networks. It is based on the CAN application layer (CAL) in accordance with CiA DS 301 (EN 50325-4).

channel:

A logic RTU master or slave in an RTU module.

configuration:

The arrangement and interconnection of hardware components within a system and the hardware and software selections that determine the operating characteristics of the system.

ConneXview:

ConneXview is a set of configuration files to be used with HiVision 6.x network management software from Hirschmann Electronics GmbH & Co. KG. ConneXview makes it possible to manage Schneider Electric Transparent Factory devices using HiVision 6.0 or newer. ConneXview is built on the widely used simple network management protocol (SNMP).

D

default gateway:

The IP address of the network or host to which all packets addressed to an unknown network or host are sent. The default gateway is typically a router or other device.

device name:

A user defined, unique logical personal identifier for a network device. After the Ethernet communications module is configured with a valid device name, the DHCP server uses it to identify the rack at power up.

DHCP:

dynamic host configuration protocol. DHCP is a TCP/IP protocol that allows network devices (DHCP clients) to obtain their IP addresses from a DHCP server through a request to the server.

E**EcoStruxure™ Control Expert:**

Control Expert is the programming software for all PACs. The software includes five IEC languages that comply with IEC 61131-3. Depending on requirements, the application may use a mixture of different languages.

EFB:

elementary function block. EFBs are the elementary functions and function blocks (based on C language) that can be user-customized and stored in different block libraries.

embedded Web pages:

Embedded Web pages (accessed by an installed HTTP server) provide Ethernet communications modules with easy access to devices anywhere in the world from standard browsers such as Internet Explorer or Netscape Navigator.

EMC:

electromagnetic compatibility. Devices that meet EMC requirements can operate within a system's expected electromagnetic limits.

Ethernet II:

A frame format in which the header specifies the packet type, Ethernet II is the default frame format for STB NIP 2212 communications.

Ethernet:

A LAN cabling and signaling specification used to connect devices within a defined area, e. g., a building. Ethernet uses a bus or a star topology to connect different nodes on a network.

F

FactoryCast:

FactoryCast is an open automation framework based on Internet technologies that is designed to provide seamless communication between plant floor and business systems. Its main capabilities include:

- Modbus TCP/IP for client-server messaging
- I/O scanner for handling I/O devices
- embedded web services for diagnostics and configuration
- a full set of Internet protocols

FAST:

The fast (FAST) task is a periodic, high-priority task of a short duration that is run on a processor through its programming software. The fast speed of the task keeps it from interfering with the execution of lower priority master (MAST) tasks. A FAST task is useful when fast periodic changes in discrete inputs need to be monitored.

FDR:

The *fast device replacement* service offers a method of handling device replacement without disrupting the system nor interrupting service.

Flash memory:

Flash memory is nonvolatile memory that can be overwritten. It is stored on a special EEPROM that can be erased and reprogrammed.

frame:

A frame is a group of bits that form a discrete block of information. Frames contain network control information or data. The size and composition of a frame is determined by the network technology being used.

framing type:

Two common framing types for Ethernet are Ethernet II and IEEE 802.3.

FTP:

File Transfer Protocol. FTP is the World Wide Web's file transfer protocol.

G

gateway:

A device that connects networks with dissimilar network architectures and which operates at the Application Layer of the OSI model. This term may refer to a router.

Global Data:

Global Data provides the automatic exchange of data variables for the coordination of PLC applications.

GMRP:

GARP multicast registration protocol. GMRP is a GARP (Generic Attribute Registration Protocol) application that allows switches and bridges to dynamically manage the membership of multicast groups. GMRP is defined by IEEE 802.1D.

H**half duplex (HDX):**

A method of data transmission capable of communication in either of two directions, but in only one direction at a time.

HMI:

human-machine interface. An operator interface, usually graphical, for industrial equipment.

hot swapping:

Replacing a component with a like component while the system remains operational. When the replacement component is installed, it begins to function automatically.

HTTP server:

The installed HTTP server transmits Web pages between a server and a browser, providing Ethernet communications modules with easy access to devices anywhere in the world from standard browsers such as Internet Explorer or Netscape Navigator.

HTTP:

HyperText Transfer Protocol. HTTP is the protocol for the formatting and transmission of files on the world wide web. HTTP runs on top of TCP/IP (Internet) protocols.

hub:

A hub device connects a series of flexible and centralized modules to create a network.



I/O module:

In a programmable controller system, an I/O module interfaces directly to the sensors and actuators of the machine/process. This module is the component that mounts in an I/O base and provides electrical connections between the controller and the field devices. Normal I/O module capacities are offered in a variety of signal levels and capacities.

I/O Scan List:

A configuration table which identifies the targets with which repetitive communication is authorized.

I/O scanning:

An I/O scan continuously polls I/O modules to collect data bits and status and diagnostics information. This process monitors inputs and control outputs.

%I:

Represents an input bit.

ICMP:

Internet Control Message Protocol. ICMP is a protocol within TCP/IP that reports detected errors in datagram transmissions.

IEEE:

Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. The international standards and conformity assessment body for all fields of electrotechnology, including electricity and electronics.

IOA:

information object access. IOA is the exchange protocol carried out over the HTTP (HyperText Transfer Protocol) channel.

IODDT:

input/output derived data type. IODDT is a structured data type representing a module or a channel of a PLC module. Each application expert module possesses its own IODDTs.

IP address:

Internet protocol address. This 32-bit address is assigned to hosts that use TCP/IP.

IP:

Internet protocol. That part of the TCP/IP protocol family that tracks the Internet addresses of nodes, routes outgoing messages, and recognizes incoming messages.

%IW:

Represents an input word register.

L**LAN:**

local area network. A short-distance data communications network.

layer:

In the OSI model, a layer is a portion of the structure of a device that provides defined services for the transfer of information.

LED:

light emitting diode. An indicator that lights up when electricity passes through it. It indicates the operation status of a communications module.

M**%M:**

Represents a memory bit.

MAC address:

media access control address. A 48-bit number, unique on a network, that is programmed into each network card or device when it is manufactured.

MAST:

A master (MAST) task is a processor task that is run through its programming software. The MAST task has two sections:

- **IN:** Inputs are copied to the IN section before execution of the MAST task.
- **OUT:** Outputs are copied to the OUT section after execution of the MAST task.

MIB:

management information base. The MIB is an object database that is monitored by a network management system like SNMP. SNMP monitors devices that are defined by their MIBs. Schneider has obtained a private MIB, *groupeschneider* (3833).

Modbus:

Modbus is an application layer messaging protocol. Modbus provides client and server communications between devices connected on different types of buses or networks. Modbus offers many services specified by function codes. There are two types of Modbus transmission, based on information in the physical layer:

- MB/serial: the Modbus type that transmits data over serial RS-232 and RS-422/485
- MB/TCP: the Modbus type that transmits data over Ethernet

multicast filtering:

Multicast filtering is a process for deciding that multicast messages are delivered only to the stations that are registered members of the appropriate *multicast group*.

multicast:

Multicast communications send packets from a single source to a predefined *multicast group* of network destinations, usually through a router or switch. Sending messages to just the group members relieves unnecessary traffic created by broadcast communications and does not require a separate unicast transmissions to each recipient. (See *broadcast*, *unicast*, *GMRP*.)

%MW:

Represents a memory word register.

N

NMT:

network management. NMT protocols provide services for network initialization, diagnostics, and device status control.

NTP:

network time protocol. NTP synchronizes the time of one client or server to the time of another server or referenced source (such as a satellite receiver).

O

OSI model:

Open Systems Interconnection model. The OSI reference model is the abstract seven-layer model for establishing logical communications and protocol design. The model was developed by the International Standards Organization (ISO).

P**packet:**

The unit of data sent across a network.

PAC:

programmable automation controller The PAC is the brain of an industrial manufacturing automation process. It automates a process as opposed to relay control systems. PACs are computers suited to survive the harsh conditions of the industrial environment.

PING:

packet Internet groper. A PING program tests communications to another network destination.

PL7:

PL7 software from Telemecanique is a programming language for TSX Micro and Modicon Premium PLCs.

PLC:

programmable logic controller. The PLC is the brain of an industrial manufacturing process. It automates a process as opposed to relay control systems. PLCs are computers suited to survive the harsh conditions of the industrial environment.

port 502:

TCP/IP reserves specific server ports for specific applications through IANA (Internet Assigned Numbers Authority). Modbus requests are sent to registered software port 502.

private MIB:

Schneider has obtained a private MIB, groupeschneider (3833). Under the Groupe Schneider private MIB is a Transparent Factory Ethernet (TFE) private MIB. The Transparent Factory SNMP embedded component controls the Schneider private MIB function. This MIB includes a set of data that enables the network management system to supervise all the Transparent Ready services. The Transparent Ready private MIB can be downloaded from the Web server.

PUB:

A Global Data variable that is published.

Q**%QW:**

Represents an output word register.

R

router:

A router device connects two or more sections of a network and allows information to flow between them. A router examines every packet it receives and decides whether to block the packet from the rest of the network or transmit it. The router attempts to send the packet through the network on an efficient path.

RTU:

Remote Terminal Unit.

S

service class:

Transparent Ready service classes make it possible to identify the services provided by each device, such as:

- diagnostic, display, and control services via Web technologies
- Ethernet communication services

The Transparent Ready service classes thus simplify the choice of products and check their interoperability within an architecture.

%S:

Represents a system bit.

SMTP:

Simple Mail Transfer Protocol. SMTP is a transmission protocol for sending and receiving e-mail. SMTP messages are usually retrieved from a server with an e-mail client (such as POP or IMAP).

SNMP agent:

The SNMP application that runs on a network device.

SNMP:

simple network management protocol. The UDP/IP standard protocol used to monitor and manage devices on an IP network.

subnet mask:

The subnet mask is a bit mask that identifies or determines which bits in an IP address correspond to the network address and which correspond to the subnet portions of the address. The subnet mask comprises the network address plus the bits reserved for identifying the subnetwork.

subnet:

The subnet is that portion of the network that shares a network address with the other parts of the network. A subnet may be physically or logically independent from the rest of the network. A part of an Internet address called a subnet number, which is ignored in IP routing, distinguishes the subnet.

SUB:

A Global Data variable that is defined as a subscription variable.

%SW:

Represents a system word register.

switch:

A network switch connects two or more separate network segments and allows traffic to be passed between them. A switch determines whether a frame should be blocked or transmitted based on its destination address.

T**TCP/IP:**

Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. TCP/IP is the communication protocol of the Internet.

TFE:

transparent factory Ethernet. Schneider Electric's open automation framework based on TCP/IP.

TFTP:

Trivial File Transfer Protocol. TFTP is a scaled-down version of FTP that uses UDP, often to initialize diskless workstations.

Transparent Device Access:

Transparent Device Access (TDA) functionality means that clients that run Control Expert (and that are connected to a USB, Ethernet, or Modbus terminal port of a communications module) can access or download applications to devices on distributed control networks. The reverse, however, is not true. In other words, a Control Expert PC connected to the CPU's Modbus port can access devices on other core networks, but those remote devices can not access other devices on different networks through the PLC station.

Transparent Factory:

See TFE.

Transparent Ready:

Schneider Electric's Transparent Ready products (based on universal Ethernet TCP/IP and Web technologies) can be integrated into real-time, data sharing systems, with no need for interfaces.

U

UDP:

user datagram protocol. UDP is an Internet communications protocol defined by IETF RFC 768. This protocol facilitates the direct transmission of datagrams on IP networks. UDP/IP messages do not expect a response, and are therefore ideal for applications in which dropped packets do not require retransmission (such as streaming video and networks that demand real-time performance).

unicast:

Unicast communications send point-to-point packets from a single source to a specific network destination. It is an efficient means of communication between hosts that has a minimal impact on network traffic. (See *broadcast* and *multicast*.)

Unity Pro:

Unity Pro is the programming software for all Unity PLCs. It includes 5 IEC languages that comply with IEC 61131-3. Depending on requirements, the application may use a mixture of different languages.

NOTE:

Unity Pro is the former name of Control Expert for version 13.1 or earlier.

USB:

universal serial bus. USB is a nearly universal hardware interface for connecting peripheral devices.

V

variable:

A variable is a memory entity of the type BOOL, WORD, DWORD, etc., whose contents can be modified by the program during execution.

Index

10/100 BASE-T interface 33

A

addressing
 BOOTP 81
 DHCP 81
 Advantys 167

B

bandwidth checking
 configuration parameters 186
 bandwidth monitoring 95, 116
 block
 add timer to verify completion of block 310
 BMXNOE01x0 113
 close memory card door 23
 BMXP342020 119
 BMXP342030 119
 BMXRMS008MP 50
 BMXRMS008MPF 50
 BMXRMS128MPF 50
 BMXRWSB000M 50
 BMXRWSC016M 50

C

certifications 118
 channel data structure for all modules
 IODDT 229
 T_GEN_MOD 229
 configuration
 bandwidth checking 186
 configuring for Ethernet 123
 Control Expert
 Advantys 161
 DTM container 161

D

debugging communication 203

DFB

 add timer to verify completion of block 310
 DHCP addressing 115
 DTM container 161

E

electronic mail notification 105
 configuring parameters 189
 error message
 without memory card 56
 Ethernet modules 22
 communication requirements 21
 communication services 57
 device name 60, 67
 hardware 60, 112
 hardware requirements 21
 hardware selection 40
 IP parameters 58
 language objects 212
 memory card selection 49
 module overview 36
 port status 65
 Web pages 246
 Ethernet network 36

F

fast device replacement 93, 116
 frame format 64
 frame size
 Ethernet 114
 function block
 add timer to verify completion of block 310

G

global data 91, 115
 grounding 47

I

I/O scanner 76, 114
 I/O scanning
 BMX NOE Ethernet 144

multiple lines 150
 IP address 319
 IP parameters 58

M

managed variables 167
 memory card
 features 54
 memory card door
 close, BMXNOE01x0 23
 memory cards 49–50
 MIB 87, 330
 Modbus TCP messaging 113

N

NTP 100, 116, 191

P

parameter settings 212
 PRA
 Control Expert 161

R

rotary switches
 M340 60

S

selecting Ethernet devices 328
 SEND_EMAIL 108
 service classes
 Transparent Ready 326
 services
 addressing (BOOTP, DHCP) 81
 bandwidth monitoring 95, 116
 DHCP addressing 115
 electronic mail notification 105
 Ethernet 76
 fast device replacement 93, 116
 global data 91, 115
 I/O scanner 76, 114

Modbus TCP messaging 113
 NTP 116
 Security 113, 119
 selecting 42
 SNMP 86, 115
 TCP/IP messaging 97
 time synchronization 100
 software configuration parameters 124
 SMTP 105
 SNMP 86, 115
 standards 118

T

T_COM_EIP
 M340 213
 T_COM_ETH_BMX 219
 T_GEN_MOD 229
 TCP/IP
 messaging 97
 technical characteristics 309
 TDA 98
 time synchronization 100, 116
 configuring parameters 191
 timer
 add to block to verify completion of
 block 310

W

Web pages 246
 website 21

Schneider Electric
35 rue Joseph Monier
92500 Rueil Malmaison
France

www.se.com

As standards, specifications, and design change from time to time, please ask for confirmation of the information given in this publication.

© 2026 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

31007131.19